

# **bizhub PRESS**

## **1250/1250P/1052**

User's Guide   Printer



---

# Contents

## 1 Introduction

<b>1.1</b>	<b>Welcome .....</b>	<b>1-2</b>
1.1.1	Composition of User's Guide.....	1-2
1.1.2	User's Guide .....	1-3
<b>1.2</b>	<b>Conventions used in this manual .....</b>	<b>1-4</b>
1.2.1	Symbols used in this manual .....	1-4
1.2.2	Original and paper indications .....	1-5

## 2 Overview

<b>2.1</b>	<b>What is the image controller?.....</b>	<b>2-2</b>
2.1.1	Role of the image controller.....	2-2
2.1.2	Print flows .....	2-3
2.1.3	Control Panel Layout .....	2-4
<b>2.2</b>	<b>Operating environment.....</b>	<b>2-6</b>
2.2.1	Supported computers and OSs.....	2-6
2.2.2	Interfaces used for connection .....	2-7
<b>2.3</b>	<b>Setup procedure .....</b>	<b>2-8</b>
2.3.1	For network connection .....	2-8
2.3.2	For local connection .....	2-8

## 3 Before installing the printer driver

<b>3.1</b>	<b>Introduction .....</b>	<b>3-2</b>
<b>3.2</b>	<b>Printer drivers compatible with respective operating systems.....</b>	<b>3-2</b>
<b>3.3</b>	<b>Connection methods selectable in each operating system.....</b>	<b>3-4</b>
3.3.1	Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 .....	3-4
3.3.2	Windows XP/Server 2003 .....	3-5
3.3.3	Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6.....	3-6
3.3.4	NetWare .....	3-6

## 4 Installing the Windows printer driver

<b>4.1</b>	<b>About installer .....</b>	<b>4-2</b>
4.1.1	Operating environment of the installer.....	4-2
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Easy installation procedure using the installer .....</b>	<b>4-3</b>
4.2.1	Settings of this machine .....	4-3
4.2.2	Installing the printer driver (PCL driver).....	4-4
4.2.3	Installing the printer driver (PS Plug-in driver) .....	4-7

## 5 Manual Installation Using the Add Printer Wizard

<b>5.1</b>	<b>Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 .....</b>	<b>5-2</b>
5.1.1	For network connection (LPR/Port 9100/SMB) .....	5-2
5.1.2	For network connection (IPP/IPPS) .....	5-7
5.1.3	For network connection (Web service print) .....	5-9
5.1.4	For local connection .....	5-13
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Windows XP/Server 2003 .....</b>	<b>5-15</b>
5.2.1	For network connection (LPR/Port9100) .....	5-15
5.2.2	For network connection (SMB) .....	5-18
5.2.3	For network connection (IPP/IPPS) .....	5-21
5.2.4	For local connection .....	5-22



<b>6</b>	<b>Installation on Macintosh Computers</b>	
<b>6.1</b>	<b>Printer Driver for Mac OS</b>	<b>6-2</b>
6.1.1	Installing the PS Plug-in driver	6-2
6.1.2	Installing the PS PPD driver	6-3
6.1.3	Selecting and connecting a printer	6-4
<b>7</b>	<b>Installation when Using NetWare</b>	
<b>7.1</b>	<b>NetWare</b>	<b>7-2</b>
7.1.1	Network Settings	7-2
7.1.2	Configuring the Windows client	7-2
<b>8</b>	<b>Uninstalling the Printer Driver</b>	
<b>8.1</b>	<b>Windows</b>	<b>8-2</b>
8.1.1	Uninstalling by the installer (PCL driver)	8-2
8.1.2	Uninstalling by the uninstallation program (PCL driver)	8-3
8.1.3	Uninstalling by manual operation (PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver/PCL driver)	8-4
<b>8.2</b>	<b>Macintosh</b>	<b>8-5</b>
8.2.1	Uninstalling by manual operation (PS Plug-in driver)	8-5
8.2.2	Uninstalling by manual operation (PS PPD driver)	8-6
<b>9</b>	<b>Basic Printing Methods and Printer Functions</b>	
<b>9.1</b>	<b>Print operations</b>	<b>9-2</b>
<b>9.2</b>	<b>Printer Functions</b>	<b>9-4</b>
9.2.1	Setting paper	9-4
9.2.2	Setting a paper tray	9-6
9.2.3	Printing a number of sets of an original	9-9
9.2.4	Printing more than one page	9-11
9.2.5	Setting a front cover, back cover, interleaf, and cover	9-14
9.2.6	Setting finishing	9-16
9.2.7	Setting transparent	9-19
9.2.8	Setting an image	9-20
9.2.9	Saving and reprinting a job	9-21
<b>10</b>	<b>Print functions of PCL driver for Windows</b>	
<b>10.1</b>	<b>Default settings of the printer driver</b>	<b>10-2</b>
10.1.1	Displaying the Properties window	10-2
10.1.2	[Configure] tab	10-3
10.1.3	[Settings] tab	10-4
10.1.4	About tabs provided by OS	10-5
10.1.5	Registering the default settings	10-6
<b>10.2</b>	<b>Common Setting</b>	<b>10-7</b>
<b>10.3</b>	<b>Parameter details</b>	<b>10-9</b>
10.3.1	My Tab	10-9
10.3.2	[Basic] tab	10-11
10.3.3	[Layout] tab	10-15
10.3.4	[Finishing] tab	10-20
10.3.5	[Cover Mode] tab	10-24
10.3.6	[Stamp/Composition] tab	10-26
10.3.7	[Quality] tab	10-30
10.3.8	[Other] tab	10-32



## 11 Print functions of PS Plug-in driver

<b>11.1</b>	<b>Default settings of the printer driver .....</b>	<b>11-2</b>
11.1.1	Displaying the Configure screen .....	11-2
<b>11.2</b>	<b>Common Setting .....</b>	<b>11-4</b>
<b>11.3</b>	<b>Parameter details .....</b>	<b>11-5</b>
11.3.1	[General] tab .....	11-5
11.3.2	[Layout] tab .....	11-7
11.3.3	[Finishing] tab .....	11-9
11.3.4	[Output] tab .....	11-11
11.3.5	[Paper] tab .....	11-13
11.3.6	[Cover] tab .....	11-14
11.3.7	[Page Settings] tab .....	11-17
11.3.8	[Tabs] tab .....	11-18
11.3.9	[Tab Settings] tab .....	11-19
11.3.10	[Imaging] tab .....	11-20
11.3.11	[Forms] tab .....	11-22
11.3.12	[Image Position] tab .....	11-23
11.3.13	[Stamp] tab .....	11-24
11.3.14	[WorkFlow] tab .....	11-25
11.3.15	[Authent.] tab .....	11-26
11.3.16	[Configure] tab .....	11-28
11.3.17	[Version] tab .....	11-30
11.3.18	[Advanced] tab .....	11-31

## 12 Print functions of PPD driver for Windows

<b>12.1</b>	<b>Default settings of the printer driver .....</b>	<b>12-2</b>
12.1.1	Displaying the Properties window .....	12-2
12.1.2	[Device Settings] tab .....	12-3
12.1.3	About tabs provided by OS .....	12-3
12.1.4	Registering the default settings .....	12-4
<b>12.2</b>	<b>Common Setting .....</b>	<b>12-5</b>
<b>12.3</b>	<b>Parameter details .....</b>	<b>12-6</b>
12.3.1	[Layout] tab .....	12-6
12.3.2	[Paper/Quality] tab .....	12-7
12.3.3	[Advanced Options] window .....	12-8

## 13 Print functions of PPD driver for Mac OS X

<b>13.1</b>	<b>Default settings of the printer driver .....</b>	<b>13-2</b>
13.1.1	Option Settings .....	13-2
13.1.2	Registering the default settings .....	13-3
<b>13.2</b>	<b>Common Setting .....</b>	<b>13-4</b>
<b>13.3</b>	<b>Adding the Custom Size .....</b>	<b>13-5</b>
<b>13.4</b>	<b>Parameter details .....</b>	<b>13-6</b>
13.4.1	[Page Attributes] .....	13-6
13.4.2	[Copies & Pages] .....	13-7
13.4.3	[Finishing] .....	13-8
13.4.4	[Image/Layout] .....	13-11
13.4.5	[Setup] .....	13-12
13.4.6	[Secure Print] .....	13-14

## 14 Function Details

<b>14.1</b>	<b>Secure Print .....</b>	<b>14-2</b>
14.1.1	Printer Driver Settings (PCL driver/PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver (Mac OS X)) .....	14-2





14.1.2	Calling a job from the control panel .....	14-5
<b>14.2</b>	<b>Save in User Box .....</b>	<b>14-6</b>
14.2.1	Printer Driver Settings (PCL driver/PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver (Mac OS X)) .....	14-6
14.2.2	Calling a job .....	14-8
<b>14.3</b>	<b>Proof Print/Wait Mode/Hold Print .....</b>	<b>14-10</b>
14.3.1	Printer Driver Settings (PCL driver/PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver (Mac OS X)) .....	14-10
14.3.2	Calling a job .....	14-13
<b>14.4</b>	<b>Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified .....</b>	<b>14-15</b>
<b>14.5</b>	<b>Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled .....</b>	<b>14-17</b>

## 15 Settings on the Control Panel

<b>15.1</b>	<b>Controller Machine Setting .....</b>	<b>15-2</b>
15.1.1	Displaying the Controller screen .....	15-2
15.1.2	Controller Machine Setting Menu screen .....	15-3
<b>15.2</b>	<b>Basic operations of User Settings.....</b>	<b>15-13</b>
15.2.1	Displaying the Utility Menu screen.....	15-13
15.2.2	Function Setting.....	15-14
<b>15.3</b>	<b>Basic operations in Administrator Settings.....</b>	<b>15-15</b>
15.3.1	Displaying the Administrator Settings screen.....	15-15
15.3.2	Administrator Setting screen .....	15-16
<b>15.4</b>	<b>Controller NIC Setting Menu.....</b>	<b>15-17</b>
15.4.1	Displaying the Controller NIC Setting screen .....	15-17

## 16 PageScope Web Connection

<b>16.1</b>	<b>Using PageScope Web Connection .....</b>	<b>16-2</b>
16.1.1	Operating environment .....	16-2
16.1.2	Accessing PageScope Web Connection .....	16-2
16.1.3	Web browser cache .....	16-3
16.1.4	Online help function .....	16-3
<b>16.2</b>	<b>Login and Logout .....</b>	<b>16-4</b>
16.2.1	Login and logout flows.....	16-4
16.2.2	Logout.....	16-7
16.2.3	Login .....	16-8
<b>16.3</b>	<b>Structure of pages .....</b>	<b>16-11</b>
<b>16.4</b>	<b>Overview of the user mode .....</b>	<b>16-13</b>
16.4.1	Information .....	16-13
16.4.2	Job .....	16-14
16.4.3	Box.....	16-15
16.4.4	Direct print .....	16-16
<b>16.5</b>	<b>Administrator mode overview.....</b>	<b>16-17</b>
16.5.1	Maintenance .....	16-17
16.5.2	Security .....	16-18
16.5.3	Box.....	16-18
16.5.4	Printer Setting .....	16-19
16.5.5	Scan .....	16-20
16.5.6	Network.....	16-21

## 17 Utility tool

<b>17.1</b>	<b>Font Management Utility .....</b>	<b>17-2</b>
-------------	--------------------------------------	-------------

## 18 Troubleshooting

<b>18.1</b>	<b>Cannot print.....</b>	<b>18-2</b>
<b>18.2</b>	<b>Cannot configure the settings/Cannot print according to the settings.....</b>	<b>18-4</b>



18.2.1	The printer driver settings have no effect .....	18-4
18.2.2	Others .....	18-5
18.2.3	Error message.....	18-5

## 19 Product Specification/Report

<b>19.1</b>	<b>Product specifications.....</b>	<b>19-2</b>
<b>19.2</b>	<b>Printing reports .....</b>	<b>19-5</b>
19.2.1	Configuration Page Print.....	19-5
19.2.2	PCL Demo Page Print .....	19-11
19.2.3	PS Demo Page Print .....	19-12
19.2.4	PCL Font List .....	19-13
19.2.5	PS font list.....	19-16

## 20 Appendix

<b>20.1</b>	<b>PPD driver (For Linux and applications) .....</b>	<b>20-2</b>
20.1.1	PPD driver types .....	20-2
20.1.2	PPD driver for Linux.....	20-2
20.1.3	PPD driver for applications .....	20-3
<b>20.2</b>	<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>20-4</b>

## 21 Index

<b>21.1</b>	<b>Index by item .....</b>	<b>21-2</b>
<b>21.2</b>	<b>Index by button.....</b>	<b>21-4</b>



## Introduction

# 1 Introduction

## 1.1 Welcome

Thank you for purchasing this machine.

This User's Guide describes the functions, operating instructions, precautions for correct operation, and simple troubleshooting guidelines of this machine. In order to obtain maximum performance from this product and use it effectively, please read this User's Guide as necessary.

### 1.1.1 Composition of User's Guide

Printed manuals	Overview
[User's Guide - Security]	This guide describes the security functions. Please read this guide for comprehension of how to use the Enhanced Security mode and detailed machine operation in Enhanced Security mode.
[Operation Quick Guide]	This guide mainly describes how to use frequently used functions. Please read this guide for quick comprehension of various features available on the machine.
[Safety Information]	This guide provides precautions and requests that should be followed to ensure safe usage of this machine. Please be sure to read this guide before using the machine.
User's guide CD manuals	Overview
[User's Guide - Copier]	This guide describes an outline of the machine and copy operations. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Configuration and specifications of the main body and options</li> <li>• Turning on/off the machine</li> <li>• Paper information</li> <li>• Making a basic copy and setting procedures</li> <li>• Supplies and disposals</li> <li>• Application, Output Setting, and Job List</li> <li>• Troubleshooting</li> </ul>
[User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference]	This guide provides you with detailed information on machine management and how to customize the machine according to your daily use. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tray Setting</li> <li>• Both Sides Adjust</li> <li>• Controller Setting</li> <li>• Adjustment, Utility Menu Screen</li> <li>• Network Setting</li> <li>• PageScope Web Connection</li> <li>• Web Utilities</li> </ul>
[User's Guide - Printer]	This guide describes the settings of the printer drivers and utility tools. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• PCL driver</li> <li>• PS Plug-in driver</li> <li>• PS PPD driver</li> <li>• PageScope Web Connection</li> </ul>

User's guide CD manuals	Overview
[User's Guide - Network Scanner ]	<p>This guide describes operations of the network scanner functions.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Saving on the HDD for main body/Outputting</li><li>• Sending via e-mail</li><li>• Saving on the HDD for controllers</li><li>• Sending to FTP server</li><li>• Sending to SMB server</li><li>• Sending to group</li></ul>
[Trademarks/Copyrights]	<p>This guide describes trademarks, licenses, and copyrights concerning this machine.</p> <p>Please be sure to refer to this guide before using the machine.</p>

## 1.1.2 User's Guide

This User's Guide is intended for users ranging from those using this machine for the first time to administrators.

It describes basic operations, functions that enable more convenient operations, maintenance procedures, simple troubleshooting operations, and various setting methods of this machine.

Note that basic technical knowledge about the product is required to enable users to perform maintenance work or troubleshooting operations. Limit your maintenance and troubleshooting operations to the areas explained in this manual.

Should you experience any problems, please contact our service representative.

1.2 Conventions used in this manual

1.2.1 Symbols used in this manual

Symbols are used in this manual to express various types of information.  
The following describes each symbol related to correct and safe usage of this machine.

Safety Information

**⚠ WARNING**

- This symbol indicates that a failure to heed the instructions may lead to death or serious injury.

**⚠ CAUTION**

- This symbol indicates that negligence of the instructions may lead to mishandling that may cause injury or property damage.

**NOTICE**

*This symbol indicates a risk that may result in damage to this machine or documents.  
Follow the instructions to avoid property damage.*

Procedural instruction

- ✓ This check symbol indicates that it is a precondition for steps or information that you should be noted before performing the steps.

1 This format number "1" represents the first step.

2 This format number represents the order of serial steps.

- ➔ This symbol indicates a supplementary explanation of a procedural instruction.

The operation procedures are described using instruction.

- ➔ This symbol indicates transition of the control panel to access a desired menu item.



The relevant image is shown.



### Reference

*This symbol indicates a reference.*

*View the reference as required.*

## Key symbols

[ ]

Key names on the touch panel or computer screen, or a name of user's guide are indicated by these brackets.

**Bold text**

Key names on the control panel, part names, product names and option names are indicated in bold text.

## 1.2.2 Original and paper indications

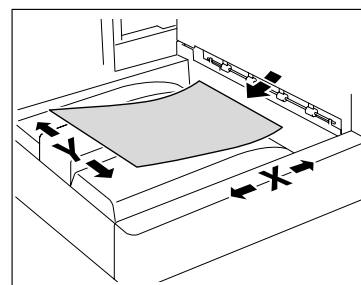
### Paper size

The following explains the indication for originals and paper described in this manual.

When indicating the original or paper size, the Y side represents the width and the X side the height.

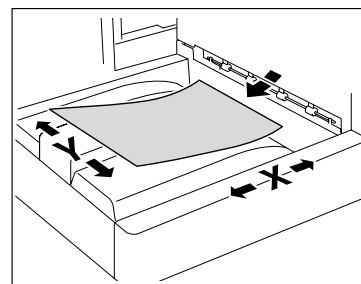
Note

- "X" is defined as "length" in "User's Guide - Copier".

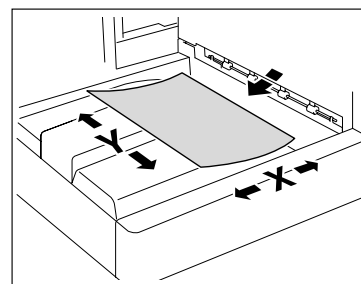


### Paper indication

☐ indicates the paper size with the height (X) being longer than the width (Y).



☐ indicates the paper size with the height (X) being shorter than the width (Y).



---

# 2

## Overview

---



## 2 Overview

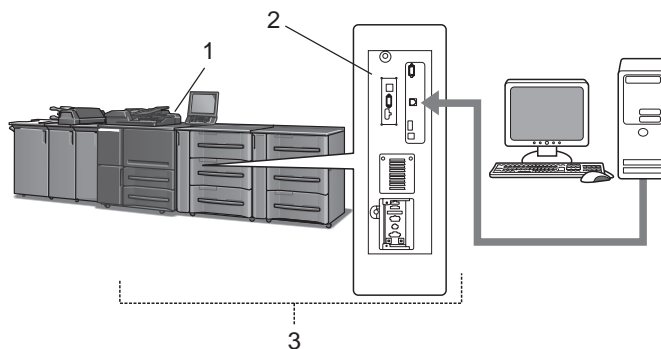
This chapter describes the overview and connection environment of the image controller that provides the printer function of the machine.

### 2.1 What is the image controller?

The image controller is a device that enables the printing and network printing functions on the machine.

#### 2.1.1 Role of the image controller

Incorporating the image controller enables the machine to function as a printing system, allowing printing using applications on the computer connected to this printing system. When using the machine as a network printer, you can print using applications on the computer.



1. The machine
2. Image controller
3. Printing system

The image controller provides the following functions.

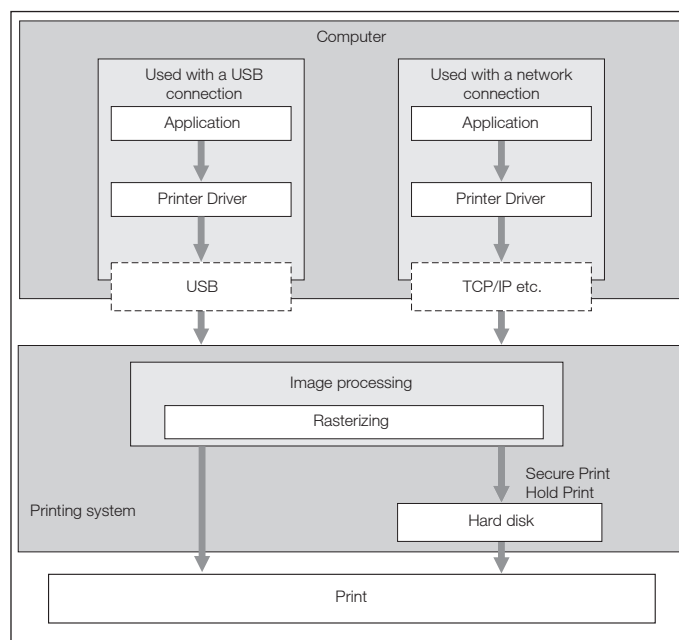
- Printing data sent from a printer driver on a computer
- Support of network protocols including TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), IPX/SPX, and AppleTalk
- Printing via a network using Web service (Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7), SMB (Windows), LPR or IPP printing
- Configuring settings for the machine and the image controller from a client computer via the network (using a Web browser)
- Control of the number of pages to be printed (the User Authentication and Account Track functions)

### 2.1.2 Print flows

The following outlines the flow of operations for using this printing system as a printer.

Print data sent from an application is received by the printer driver.

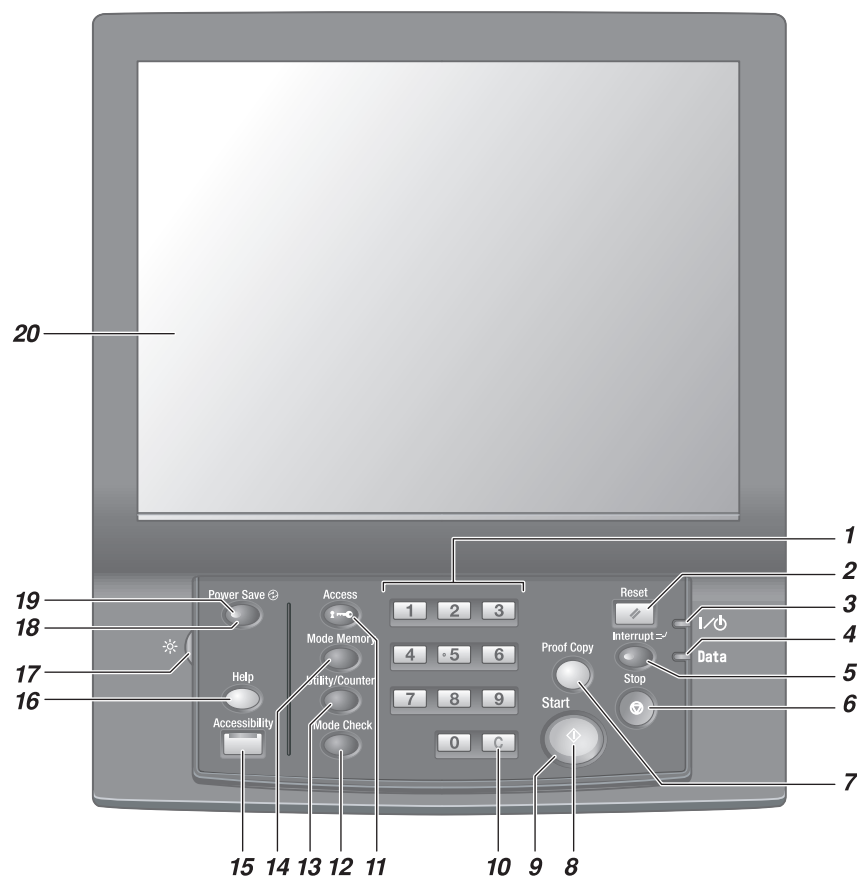
The data is sent to the image controller via the USB interface for USB connection or via Ethernet (TCP/IP, etc.) for network connection. Then the data is passed from the image controller to the machine. The image controller rasterizes images (expands output target characters and images to bitmap data). This data is printed from the machine.



While this machine is operating as a printer, originals can be scanned using the copy function or network scan function. To use the copy function of this machine, press the [Copy] key on the touch panel.

When a print job is received during copying, the data is stored in the memory of the machine. When the copying is completed, the print job is automatically printed.

### 2.1.3 Control Panel Layout



No.	Name	Description
1	<b>Keypad</b>	Enters numeric values.
2	<b>Reset</b>	Restores the machine to the initial settings.
3	<b>Power LED</b>	Lights up in red when the <b>main power switch</b> is turned on, then turns green when the <b>sub power switch</b> is turned on.
4	<b>Data LED</b>	Flashes while the machine is receiving print data.
5	<b>Interrupt</b>	Stops copying/printing/scanning in progress to allow another copying job of settings newly specified.
6	<b>Stop</b>	Suspends the current output job or stops the machine operation.
7	<b>Proof Copy</b>	Used to print a single set or the first page to verify the copy settings.
8	<b>Start</b>	Activates various machine operations.
9	<b>Start LED</b>	Lights up in blue when the machine is ready to operate. It turns orange when any operation cannot be started.
10	<b>C (Clear)</b>	Allows change in entered numeric value.
11	<b>Access</b>	Sets the machine to allow the operation only when the next user is authenticated, if user authentication or account track function is activated and an authenticated user has used the machine.
12	<b>Mode Check</b>	Used to the Mode Check Screen to check the current copy settings.

No.	Name	Description
13	<b>Utility/Counter</b>	Displays the Utility Menu Screen and various counters.
14	<b>Mode Memory</b>	Registers/Recalls the desired copy settings. Also recalls previous copy settings.
15	<b>Accessibility</b>	Adjusts the response time in <b>touch panel</b> and <b>control panel</b> key operation.
16	<b>Help</b>	Displays the Help Screen that provides information on how to operate the screen currently displayed on the <b>touch panel</b> . Also provides information on various supplies and disposals when pressed with the Machine Screen displayed.
17	<b>Brightness adjustment dial</b>	Turned to adjust the brightness of the <b>touch panel</b> .
18	<b>Power Save</b>	Enables temporary use of the machine when the <b>Power Save LED</b> is lit. Also, activates power-saving mode when pressed while the machine is inactive.
19	<b>Power Save LED</b>	Lights when any power-saving mode is activated, or machine power is off due to the weekly timer function.
20	<b>Touch panel</b>	Displays various screens to allow the function setting.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Do not press hard or pointed objects against the **touch panel** on the **control panel**.

- Otherwise, the glass may be scratched or break and you may be injured. Use fingers to operate the **touch panel**.

**⚠ CAUTION**

Stop the operation immediately when the Service Call Screen is displayed and copying cannot be continued any more.

- Otherwise, an unexpected trouble may be caused. Write down the report code as stated on the 2nd line of the message, turn off the **sub power switch** and **main power switch** in this order, then disconnect from the power socket. Contact your service representative and inform them of the report code.

**NOTICE**

The **main power switch** should normally be kept turned on. Be sure not to turn off/on the main power switch in usual operation.

Be sure not to turn off the **main power switch** before turning off the **sub power switch**.

Be sure not to turn off the **main power switch** while the following messages are displayed after turning off the **sub power switch**.

[Cooling in progress / After cooling, power off automatically]

[Power off in progress / Please do not turn the main power off]

Turning off the **main power switch** with these messages displayed may cause serious machine trouble such as toner fixation.

**Reference**

For details on turning off the power supply, refer to "User's Guide (POD Administrator's Reference)".

## 2.2 Operating environment

This section describes the system requirements for using this printing system and the interfaces used for connection.

### 2.2.1 Supported computers and OSs

Make sure that the computer to be connected meets the following conditions.

#### Windows

Operating system	The supported OS varies depending on the type of printer driver. For details, refer to page 3-2.
CPU	Any processor of the same or higher specifications as recommended for your operating system
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system Sufficient memory resource is required for your operating system and the applications to be used.
Drive	CD-ROM drive

#### Macintosh

Operating system	Mac OS X (10.4, 10.5, 10.6)
CPU	PowerPC, Intel Processor
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system
Drive	CD-ROM drive

### 2.2.2 Interfaces used for connection

To connect this printing system to a computer, the following interfaces can be used.

#### Ethernet

Use this interface to use this printing system via a network connection.

It supports 1000Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 10Base-T standards. In addition, TCP/IP (LPD/LPR, IPP, SMB), Web services, IPX/SPX (NetWare), AppleTalk (EtherTalk) protocols are supported.

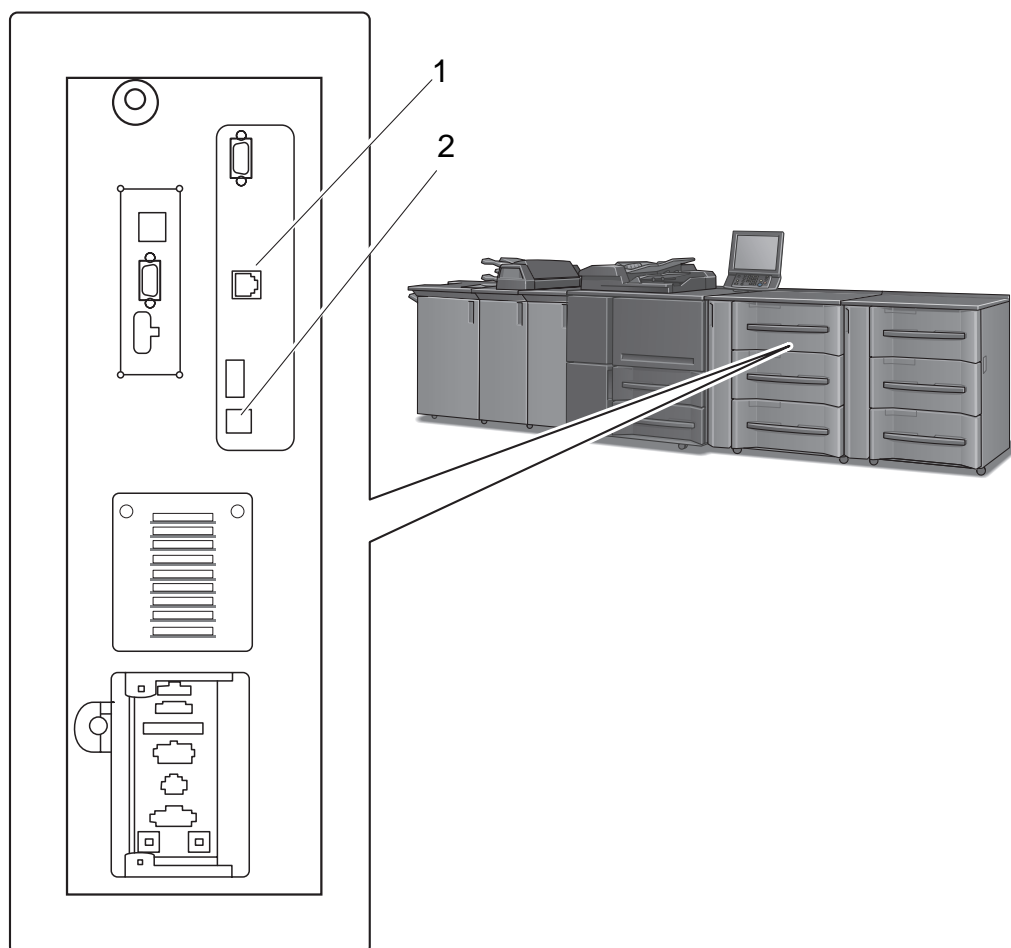
#### USB interface

Use this interface to use this printing system via a USB connection. The USB interface can be connected to a computer running Windows. A USB cable is required for connection. Use a type A (4 pin, male) or type B (4 pin, male) USB cable. A USB cable measuring three meters or less is recommended.

#### Connection diagram

The printer cables are connected to the each port of the image controller.

Back side of the machine



1. Ethernet port (1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T)
2. USB port

## 2.3 Setup procedure

To use this printing system, you must complete the setup in advance.

The setup refers to a series of procedures for connecting the printing system to the computer and installing the printer driver to the computer.

Perform the setup using the following procedures.

### 2.3.1 For network connection

- 1 Connect this printing system to the computer.
- 2 Check that the computer to be used is connected to the network.
- 3 Specify the IP address of the machine, and then connect it to the network.
- 4 Change the network settings for this printing system according to the connection method or protocol.
  - LPR: In [LPD Setting], enable LPD printing.
  - Port9100: In [TCP/IP Settings], enable the RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]).
  - SMB: Configure settings of [Print Settings] in [SMB Settings].
  - IPP/IPPS: In [IPP Settings], enable IPP printing. To use IPPS printing, install the certificate into the machine in advance.
  - Web Service Print: In [Web Service Settings], enable the print function.
  - Bonjour: In [Bonjour Setting], enable Bonjour.
  - AppleTalk: In [AppleTalk Settings], enable AppleTalk.
- 5 Install the printer driver.
  - Specify the network port for the printer driver according to the connection method or protocol.
- 6 Install the screen fonts.
  - The "Screen Font" or "Screen Fonts" folder in the Driver CD-ROM contains the screen fonts.
  - Install the screen fonts using the standard function for the OS of adding fonts. For details, refer to Help of the Operating System.
  - Macintosh fonts are compressed. Decompress them before installing.

#### Reference

- After installing the printer driver, perform test print to make sure that the connections are made properly.



#### Reference

*For details on the connectable interfaces, refer to page 2-7.*

*For details on the network settings, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".*

*The procedure for installing the printer driver varies depending on the connection method with the machine, operating system of the computer, and printer driver. For details, refer to page 3-2.*

*To update an existing printer driver, uninstall it first. For details, refer to page 8-2.*

### 2.3.2 For local connection

- 1 Connect this printing system to the computer.
- 2 Install the printer driver.
- 3 Install the screen fonts.
  - The CD-ROM contains the European TrueType fonts as "screen fonts". The "ScreenFont" or "Screen Fonts" folder in the CD-ROM contains the screen fonts.
  - Install the screen fonts using the standard function for the OS of adding fonts. For details, refer to Help of the Operating System.



**Before installing the printer  
driver**

---



## 3 Before installing the printer driver

The following describes the information necessary for selecting a printer driver.

### 3.1 Introduction

This chapter describes the information you should keep in mind before installing the printer driver.

The procedure for installing the printer driver varies depending on how this machine is connected to the computer, operating system installed on the computer, and type of the printer driver to be installed.

To determine the printer driver to be installed and connection method, check the operating system of the computer and connection environment.

Select the installation method according to the printer driver and connection method.

### 3.2 Printer drivers compatible with respective operating systems

Before using this printing system, you must install the printer driver.

The following lists the printer drivers included on the CD and the supported operating systems. Select the required printer driver.

Printer driver	Page description language	Supported Operating Systems
PCL Driver	PCL	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3)* Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3)* Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2)* Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) * Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) * Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) * Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) * Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) * Windows Server 2008, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) * Windows Server 2008, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) * Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1) * Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1) Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) * Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) * Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) * Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1) * Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.

Printer driver	Page description language	Supported Operating Systems
PS Plug-in Driver	PostScript 3 Emulation	<p>Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2)  Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1)  Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1)  * Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.</p> <p>Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6</p>
PostScript PPD driver (PS-PPD)	PostScript 3 Emulation	<p>Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2)  Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2)  Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1)  * Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.</p> <p>Mac OS X (10.4, 10.5, 10.6)</p>

## Reference

- Select the page description language according to the application used for printing.
- Either the installer or Add Printer Wizard can be used for installing the PS Plug-in driver and PCL driver for Windows.

### 3.3 Connection methods selectable in each operating system

The connection method for this machine varies depending on the operating system of the computer. The printer driver installation method also varies depending on the connection method. This machine can be connected via a network or a USB interface. In network connection, the printer driver installation method varies depending on the protocol to be used.

Network connection (Ethernet):

This machine is connected as a network printer.

This printing system supports 1000Base-T, 100Base-TX, and 10Base-T standards. In addition, TCP/IP (LPD/LPR, IPP, SMB), IPX/SPX (NetWare), AppleTalk (EtherTalk) protocols are supported.

The applicable protocols vary depending on the operating system of the computer.

USB interface:

This machine is connected as a local printer. The USB interface can be connected to a computer running Windows.

For USB connection, this manual covers only the plug and play based setup procedures.

#### 3.3.1 Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection method in which installer-based setup is possible	Port 9100	A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port.	p. 4-2 <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Select a connection method during installation procedures. Select [Normal Printing] for the Port 9100 or USB connection method, or [Internet Printing] for the IPP connection method.</li></ul>
	IPP	A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the Internet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol.	
	USB	A connection using a USB port.	
Connection method in which setup is possible using Add Printer Wizard	LPR	A network connection using the LPR (Line Printer Remote) print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the LPR printing port.	p. 5-2
	Port9100	A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port.	
	SMB	A network connection using SMB (Server Message Block) for sharing files or printers in Windows. It supports the TCP/IP protocol.	
	IPP/IPPS	A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the Internet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communication.	
	Web service print	It is a connection corresponding to Web Service function of Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 and capable of automatically detecting the printer on the network.	
	USB	A connection using a USB port.	
Connection method in which plug and play-based setup is possible	USB	A connection using a USB port.	p. 5-13

## Reference

- Log on to the computer using a user name with the Administrator privilege, and then install the printer driver.

**Reference**

To use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

You cannot set up IPPS connection (Secure Print) using the installer. To use IPPS connection, use the Add Printer Wizard. For details, refer to page 5-7.

**3.3.2 Windows XP/Server 2003**

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection method in which installer-based setup is possible	Port9100	A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port.	p. 4-2
	IPP/IPPS	A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the Internet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communication.	
	USB	A connection using a USB port.	
Connection method in which setup is possible using Add Printer Wizard	LPR	A network connection using the LPR (Line Printer Remote) print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the LPR printing port.	Windows XP/ Server 2003: p. 5-15
	Port9100	A network connection using the PORT9100 print service. It uses a TCP/IP protocol and the RAW printing port.	
	SMB	A network connection using SMB (Server Message Block) for sharing files or printers in Windows. It supports the TCP/IP protocol.	
	IPP/IPPS	A network connection using the IPP (Internet Printing Protocol) print service. Printing via the Internet is possible with the HTTP (HyperText Transfer Protocol) of the TCP/IP protocol. IPPS is an IPP for SSL encrypted communication.	
	USB	A connection using a USB port.	
Connection method in which plug and play-based setup is possible	USB	A connection using a USB port.	Windows XP/ Server 2003: p. 5-22

## Reference

- Log on to the computer using a user name with the Administrator privilege, and then install the printer driver.
- The installer does not support installation in the IPv6 environment of Windows XP/Server 2003.

**Reference**

To use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

### 3.3.3 Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6

Setup procedures	Connection method		Reference page
Connection method in which setup is possible	Bonjour	A network connection using Bonjour.	p. 6-2 <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Install your desired driver using the installer and specify the connection method when selecting the printer.</li> </ul>
	AppleTalk	A network connection using AppleTalk.	
	LPR	A network connection using the LPR print service.	
	IPP	A network connection using the IPP print service.	

#### Reference

- AppleTalk connection supports Mac OS X 10.4/10.5 only.



#### Reference

To use this machine in the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

### 3.3.4 NetWare

NetWare version	Protocol used	Connection method
NetWare 4.x	IPX	Bindery Pserver Nprinter/Rprinter
NetWare 5.x	IPX	NDS Pserver Nprinter/Rprinter
	TCP/IP	NDPS
NetWare 6.x	IPX	NDS Pserver
	TCP/IP	NDPS



#### Reference

For details on the NetWare functions, refer to the NetWare operation manual.

To use this machine in the NetWare environment, you must configure the network settings for this machine in advance. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".



## **Installing the Windows printer driver**

## 4 Installing the Windows printer driver

This chapter describes the procedure for installing the Windows printer driver using the installer.

### 4.1 About installer

The installer automatically detects the printer on the same TCP/IP network as your computer or the machine connected via USB to your computer, and allows you to install the required printer driver. You can also install the printer driver by manually specifying the connection destination.

#### **NOTICE**

*The installer installs the PS Plug-in driver and PCL driver.*

#### 4.1.1 Operating environment of the installer

Operating system	Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3) <sup>*1</sup> Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3) <sup>*1</sup> Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2) Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Server 2008 Standard (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Server 2008 Enterprise (Service Pack 2) <sup>*2</sup> Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1) <sup>*</sup> Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1) Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) <sup>*2</sup> Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) <sup>*2</sup> Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) <sup>*2</sup> Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1) <sup>*2</sup> <sup>*1</sup> The operating environment required for the printer driver is service pack 1 or later. <sup>*2</sup> Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.
CPU	Any processor of the same or higher specifications as recommended for your operating system
Memory	Memory capacity as recommended for your operating system Sufficient memory resource is required for your operating system and the applications to be used.

#### Reference

- Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 based computers requires the administrator authority.
- If a wizard window for adding new hardware opens when using USB connection, click [Cancel].
- The installer supports installation in both IPv4/IPv6 environments of Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 only. Note that it does not support [Secure Printing] (IPPS) in Windows Vista/Server 8/Server 2008 R2/7 and [Internet Printing] (IPP) in the IPv6 environment.

## 4.2 Easy installation procedure using the installer

### 4.2.1 Settings of this machine

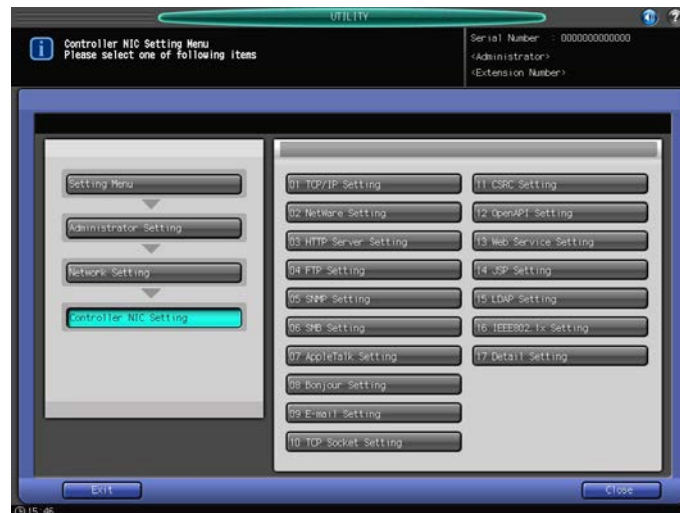
To connect the network environment, you must configure network settings for this machine in advance.



#### Reference

You can set the network settings for this machine in the screen that is displayed by selecting [Utility/Counter] - [Administrator Setting] - [Network Setting] - [Controller NIC Setting Menu].

For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".



### TCP/IP settings for this machine

In [TCP/IP Settings] of this machine, specify the IP address.



#### Reference

When this machine is connected through the network, you must previously specify the IP address on this machine so that it can be detected automatically. For details, refer to [User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference].

### RAW port number/IPP setting for this machine

Change the network settings for this machine according to the connection method or protocol.

- Port9100: In [TCP/IP Settings], enable the RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]).
- IPP/PPS: In [HTTP Server Setting], enable IPP printing.



#### Reference

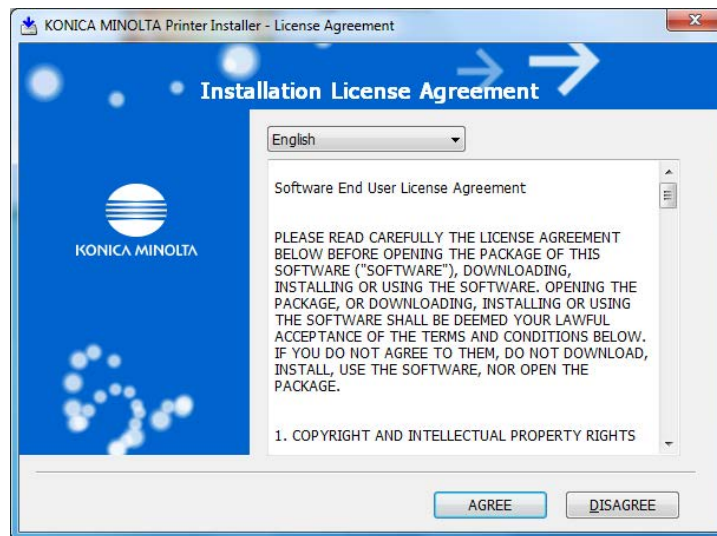
For details on TCP/IP setting and IPP setting for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

Before you can use IPPS printing, you must register a certificate with this machine. You can use the self-signed certificate that is preinstalled in this machine. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".



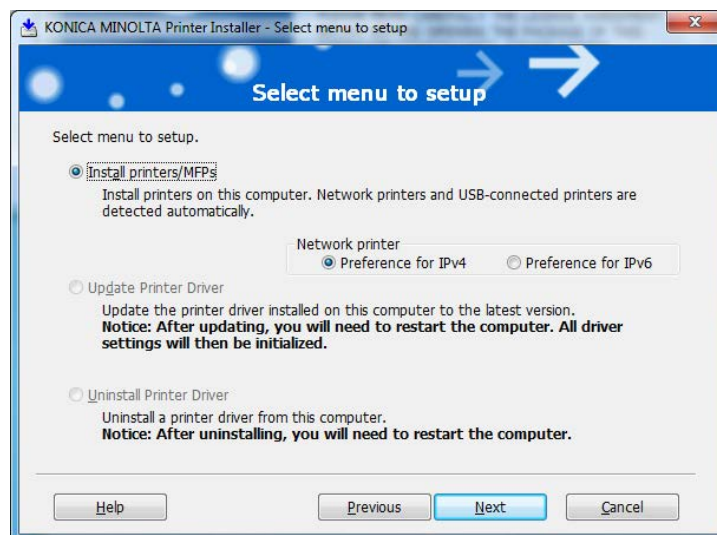
### 4.2.2 Installing the printer driver (PCL driver)

- 1 Insert the Driver CD-ROM for PCL into the CD-ROM drive.
  - If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Yes] or [Continue].
  - Confirm the CD menu is displayed, go to Step 2.
  - If the CD menu is not displayed, double-click [AutoRun.exe] on the CD-ROM, and then go to Step 2.
- 2 Select the required printer driver according to the screen.  
The installer of the printer driver starts.
- 3 Click [AGREE].



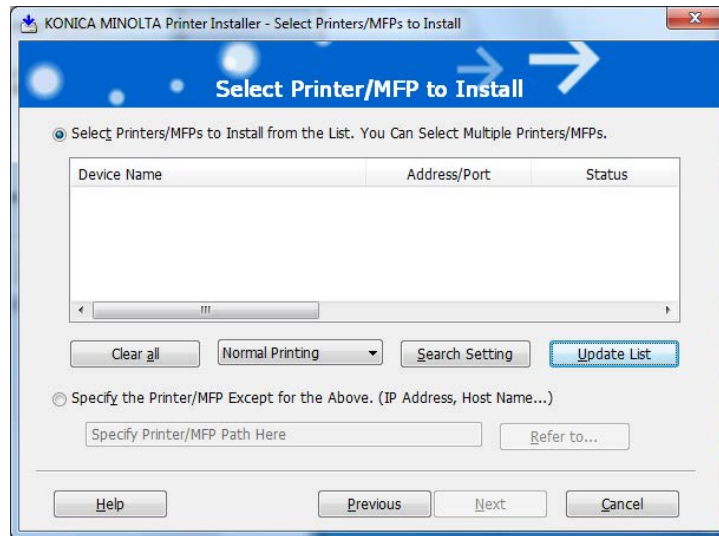
- If you disagree, you will not be able to install the driver.
- In the language display box, you can change the language used with the installer as required.

- 4 Select [Install printers/MFPs] and click [Next].



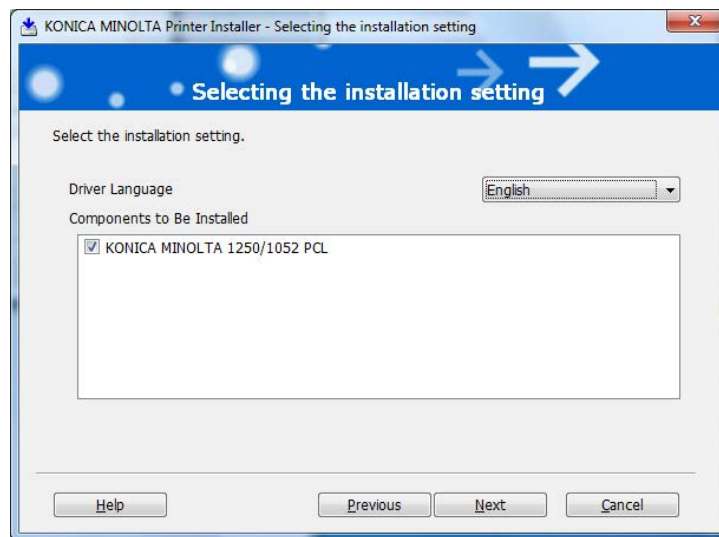
- When Printers/MFPs are detected on both IPv4 and IPv6, you can specify [IPv4 Priority] or [IPv6 Priority].

- 5 Select this machine from the list, and click [Next].

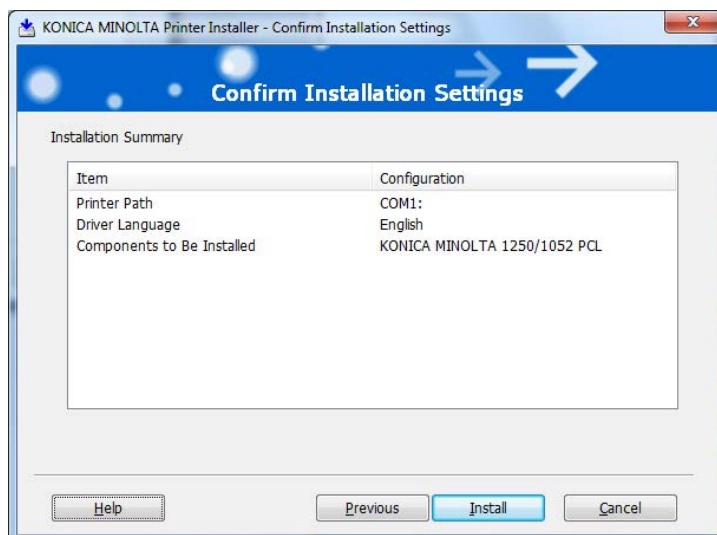


- From among the connected printers/MFPs, the models corresponding to the printer driver appears in the list. If multiple models appears, check the IP address.
- If the connection with this machine is not detected, no model appears in the list. In this case, select the [Specify the Printer/MFP Except for the Above. (IP Address, Host Name...)] at the lower part of the screen.

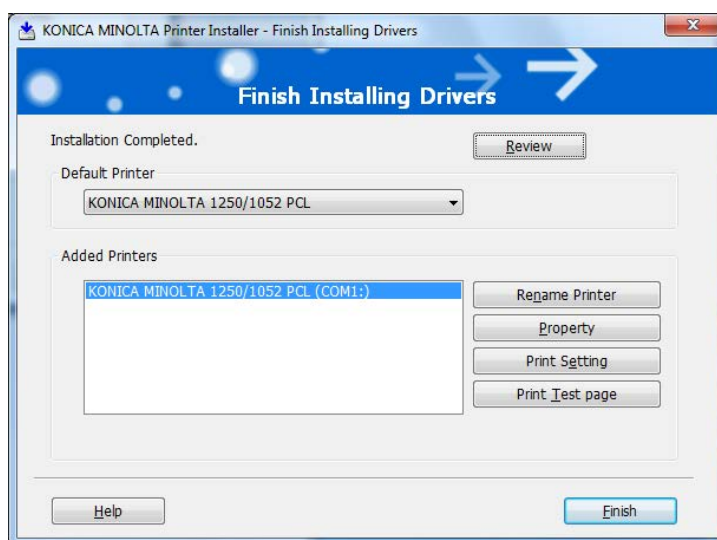
- 6 Select the component to be installed and click [Next].



- 7 Confirm the installation summary and click [Install].



- 8 Click [Finish].



The installation is complete.

→ You can confirm the installed items and settings on [Installation Completed] screen.

[Review]	You can review the installed items and configuration.
[Rename Printer]	You can change the printer name.
[Property]	You can set the property of the printer. For details, refer to page 10-2.
[Print Setting]	You can open the [Properties] screen for the printer driver and specify several settings. For details, refer to page 10-9.
[Print Test page]	You can print test page.

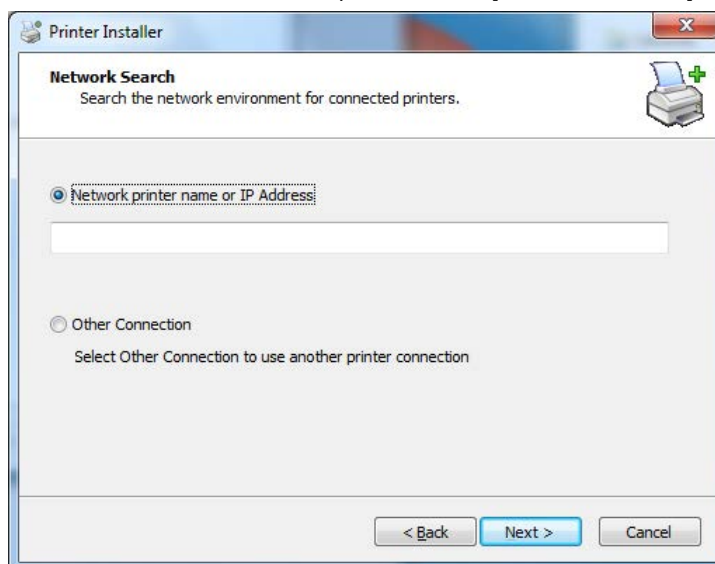
### 4.2.3 Installing the printer driver (PS Plug-in driver)

- 1 Insert the Driver CD-ROM for PS Plug-in into the CD-ROM drive.
  - When installing the driver on a Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 based computer, click [Allow] or [Continue] if the [User Account Control] window appears.
  - Confirm the CD menu is displayed, go to Step 2.
  - If the CD menu is not displayed, double-click [AutoRun.exe] on the CD-ROM, and then go to Step 2.
- 2 Select the required printer driver according to the screen.

The installer of the printer driver starts.
- 3 Click [Next].

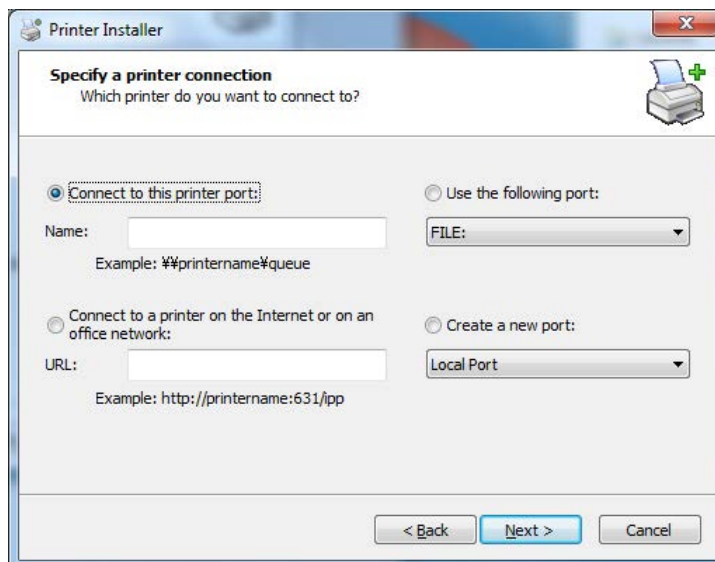


- 4 Input the printer name or IP address and press [Next].
  - If you want to connect to the other printer, select [Other Connection] and click [Next].



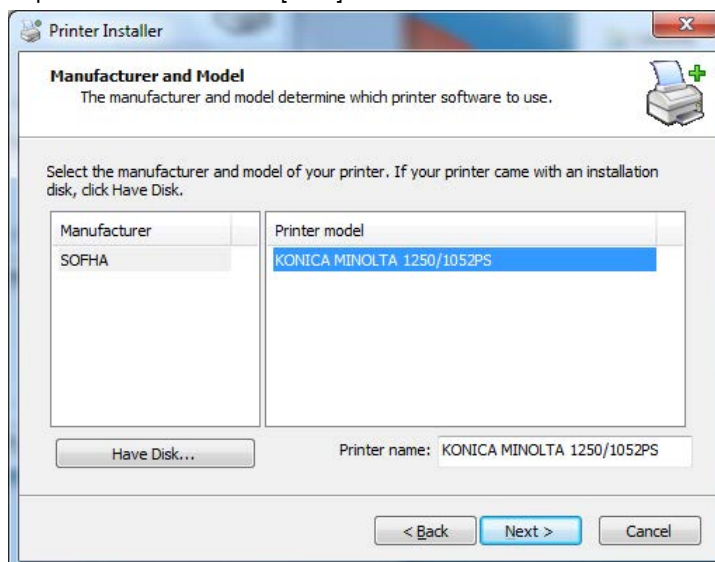
- [Network printer name or IP address] :  
This machine is set as a Windows printer.  
The printer is created with the lpr port used. (E.g.: myprinter:print.)
- [Other Connection]:  
You can specify the other printer connection (NetBIOS or port9100).

- 5 Selecting [Other Connection], specify the printer connection and click [Next].



→ If you use DNS in the network, the administrator has to check whether the network name specified to this machine is matched with the network name stored in the DNS.

- 6 Select the printer name and click [Next].



→ It displays all printers that you can install. If there is no desired printer name, click [Have Disk] and select the [Setup.inf] file.

**7** Click [Finish].

The installation is complete.

→ Once the printer is installed, you can select the printer in the application's print screen.



## **Manual Installation Using the Add Printer Wizard**

## 5 Manual Installation Using the Add Printer Wizard

This chapter describes the procedure for installing the Windows printer driver using the standard Windows Add Printer function, without using the installer.

### 5.1 Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7

#### 5.1.1 For network connection (LPR/Port 9100/SMB)

In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, you can install the printer driver either by searching for the printer on the network, or by creating a new printer port.

#### Settings of this machine

To use Port 9100, LPR, or SMB printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP Address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of this machine, specify the IP address.
RAW port number	To use Port 9100 printing: In [TCP/IP Setting] for the machine, enable the RAW port number (default value: [9100]).
LPD Setting	To use LPR printing: In [LPD Setting] for the machine, enable LPD printing.
SMB Setting	To use SMB printing: In [SMB Setting] - [Print Settings], specify NetBIOS Name, Print Service Name, and Workgroup.



#### Reference

For details on the network settings for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

To use SMB printing in the IPv6 environment, [Direct Hosting Setting] for the machine should be enabled. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

#### Installing the printer driver by searching for the printer using the Add Printer Wizard.

- ✓ Installing the driver to Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 based computers requires the administrator authority.
- ✓ Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.

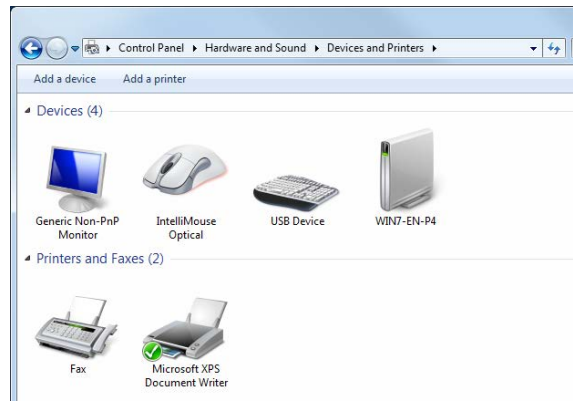
**1** Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

**2** Click [Start] and then [Devices and Printers].

→ In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Printers] under [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].

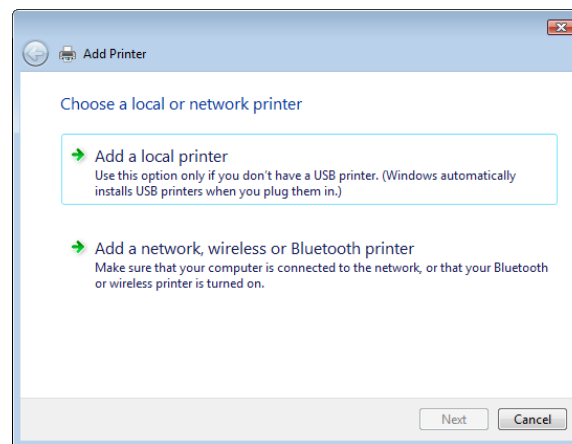


- 3 On the toolbar, select [Add a printer].



→ In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer] on the toolbar. The [Add Printer] Wizard appears.

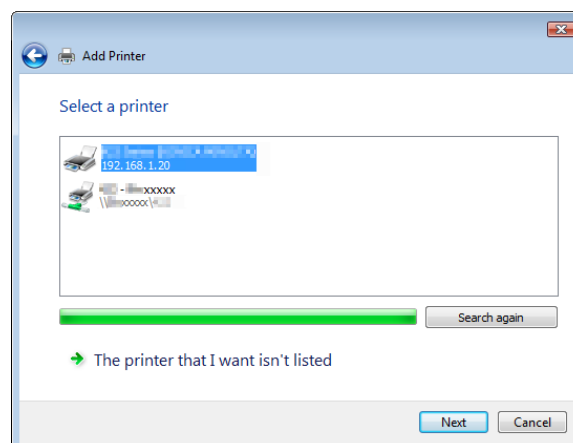
- 4 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].



Connected printers are detected.

→ If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off the printer, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn this machine on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.

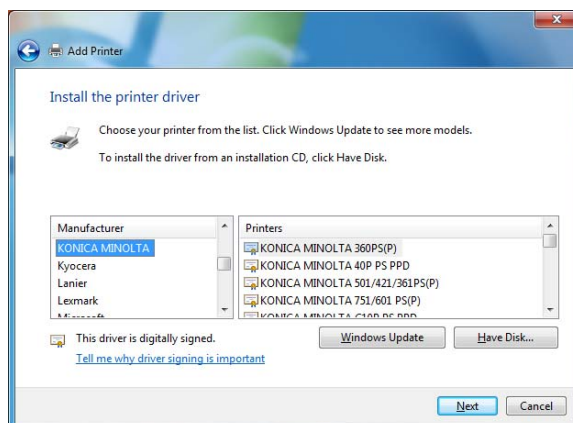
- 5 Select this machine from the list, and then click [Next].



→ To use the LPR/Port9100 protocol, select the printer with its IP address.  
 → To use the SMB connection, select the printer with its "\\NetBIOS name\print service name". You can check the NetBIOS name and print service name by selecting [Administrator Setting] - [Network Setting] - [Controller NIC Setting Menu] - [SMB Setting] - [Print Setting]. In the default setting, the last six characters of the NetBIOS name correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. To check the MAC address, select [Configuration Page]. For details on how to output [Configuration Page], refer to page 15-4.

- For the SMB connection, click [Next], and then click [OK] in the [Connect to Printer] page that appears.
- It may take some time to finish searching the entire list of printers.

**6** Click [Have Disk...].



**7** Click [Browse...].

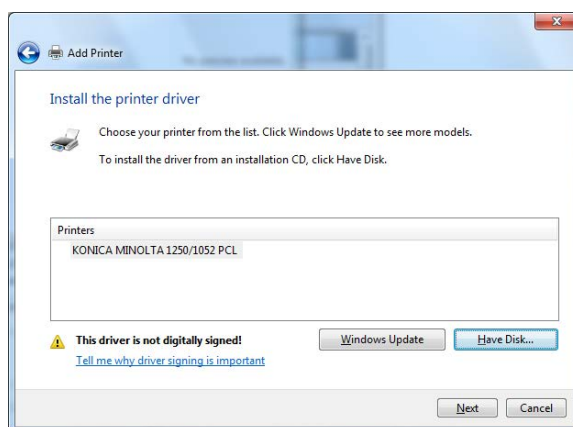
**8** Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].

- Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers: PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver

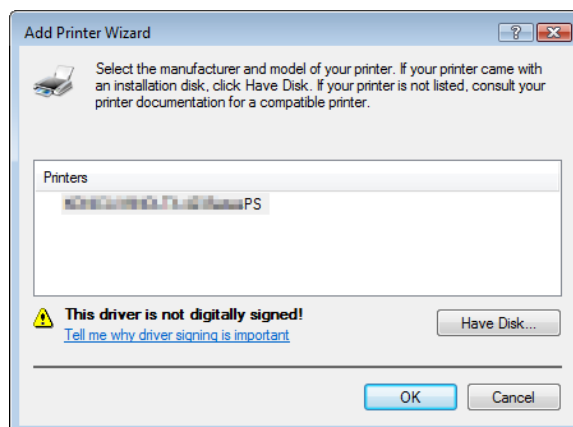
**9** Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.

**10** Click [Next].



- To use the SMB connection, click [OK].

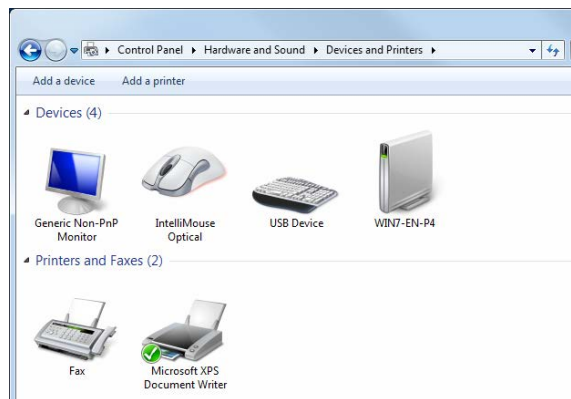


- 11 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
  - If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 12 Click [Finish].
- 13 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] or [Printers] window.
- 14 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

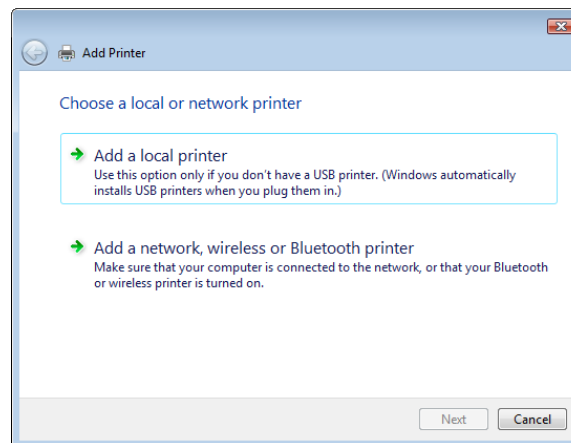
### Installing the printer driver by creating a printer port

- ✓ Installing the driver to Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 based computers requires the administrator authority.
  - ✓ Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 1 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
  - 2 Click [Start] and then [Devices and Printers].
    - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Printers] under [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - 3 On the toolbar, select [Add a printer].



- In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer] on the toolbar. [Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 Click [Add a local printer].



- 5 Click [Create a new port:], and then select the port type.

- To use the LPR/Port9100 protocol, select [Standard TCP/IP Port].
- To use the SMB connection, select [Local Port].

**6** Click [Next].

**7** Specify the IP address and port.

- To use the LPR/Port9100 protocol, select [TCP/IP Device], and then enter the IP address.
- To use the SMB connection, enter [\\NetBIOS name\print service name] in the "Port Name" box.
- Enter the same NetBIOS name and print service name specified in [SMB Setting] - [Print Setting].

**8** Click [Next].

- If [Additional Port Information Required] or [More Port Information Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.
- If the [Install the printer driver] dialog box appears, go to Step 13.

**9** Select [Custom], and then click [Settings...].

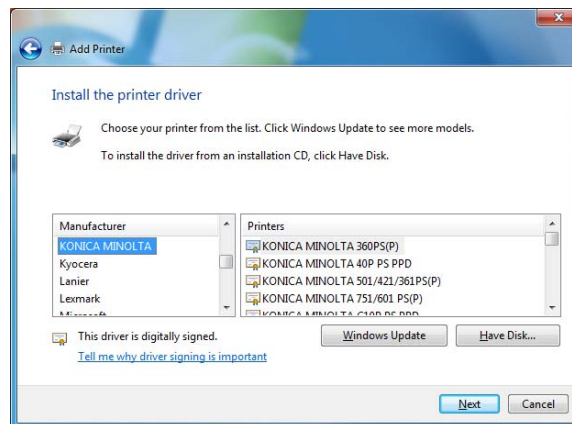
**10** Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].

- For LPR connection, select [LPR], and then enter "Print" in the [Queue Name:] box.
- You must discriminate between upper and lower case letters when entering it.
- For Port9100, select [Raw], and then enter a RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]) in the [Port Number:] box.
- If both LPR and Port 9100 are enabled on this machine, the printer driver is connected to this machine using LPR.

**11** Click [Next].

The [Install the printer driver] page appears.

**12** Click [Have Disk...].

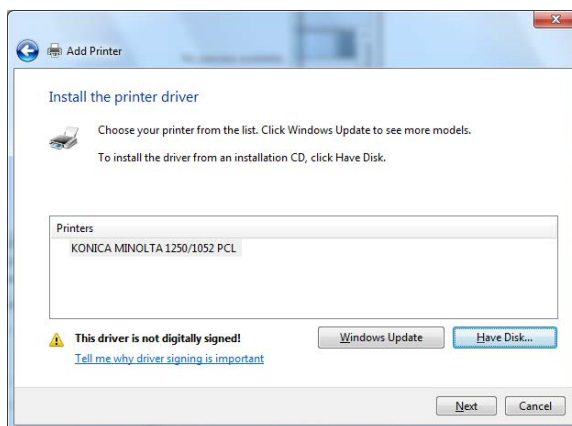


**13** Click [Browse...].

**14** Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].

- Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers:  
PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver

**15** Click [OK].

**16** Click [Next].**17** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

- If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].

**18** Click [Finish].**19** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] or [Printers] window.**20** Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

**5.1.2 For network connection (IPP/IPPS)****Settings of this machine**

To use IPP printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP Address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of this machine, specify the IP address.
IPP Setting	In [HTTP Server Setting] for the machine, enable IPP printing.

**Reference**

For details on the network settings for this machine, refer to [User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference].

Before you can use IPPS printing, you must register a certificate with this machine. You can use the self-signed certificate that is preinstalled in this machine. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

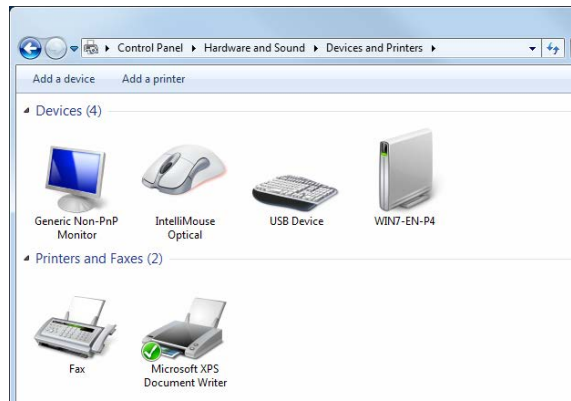
**Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard**

- ✓ Installing the driver to Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 based computers requires the administrator authority.

**1** Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**2** Click [Start] and then [Devices and Printers].

- In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Printers] under [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].

- 3 On the toolbar, select [Add a printer].



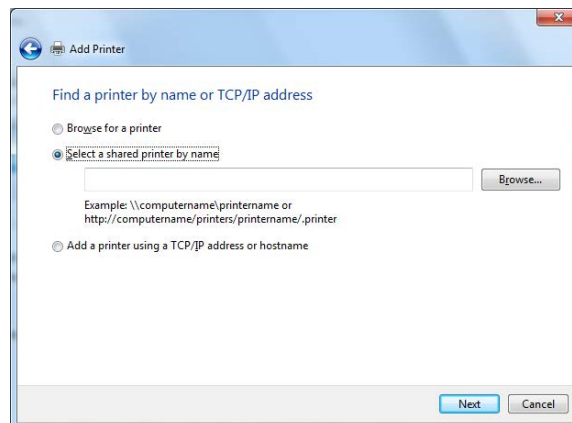
→ In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Add a printer] on the toolbar. The [Add Printer] Wizard appears.

- 4 Click [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer].

Connected printers are detected.

- 5 In the window showing the search result, click [The printer that I want isn't listed].

- 6 In the [Select a shared printer by name] box, enter the URL for the machine in the following format, and then click [Next].



- `http://<IP address for the machine>/ipp`  
Example: When the IP address for the machine is 192.168.1.20, `http://192.168.1.20/ipp`
- When specifying to use IPPS printing, enter "`https://<host name>.<domain name>/ipp`". For <Host name>. <domain name>, specify the host name and domain name registered for the DNS server being used.
- If the certificate for the machine is not the one issued by the certifying authority, you must register the certificate for the machine on the Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 system as the certificate by "Trusted Root Certification Authorities" for the computer account.
- When registering a certificate to this machine, confirm that <host name>.<domain name> is displayed as the common name of the certificate.

- 7 Click [Have Disk...].

- 8 Click [Browse...].

- 9 Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].

- Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers:  
PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver

- 10 Click [OK].

- 11 Click [OK].

**12** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

- If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].

**13** Click [Finish].

**14** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] or [Printers] window.

**15** Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

Once the settings for the printer have been configured, you can use the printer in the same way as a general local printer.

### 5.1.3 For network connection (Web service print)

In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, printers supporting the Web service print function on the network can be located and installed.

Note

- To use Web service in Windows Server 2008 R2, enable "Print and Document Services".



#### Reference

*To install a different printer driver in the computer where one has already been installed, you must uninstall the whole package of the currently installed printer driver. For details, refer to page 8-4.*

### Settings of this machine

To use the Web service print, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP Address	In [TCP/IP Setting] of this machine, specify the IP address.
Web Service Settings	In [Web Service Setting] for the machine, enable the print function.



#### Reference

*For details on the network settings for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".*

### Making the printer driver known from the Network window

To use Web service print in Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, install the printer driver before making it known to the computer with plug and play.

- ✓ Installing the driver to Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 based computers requires the administrator authority.

**1** Install the printer driver for this machine.

- Install the printer driver using the installer or Add Printer Wizard.  
The printer driver can be installed in any port.  
For details, refer to page 4-7 or page 5-2.

**2** Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network.  
Since the printer is searched for, be sure to connect this machine to the network.

**3** To use the Web service print, check that [Network discovery] is enabled in [Network and Sharing Center] - [Change advanced sharing settings] on the computer.

**4** Open the [Network] window.

- In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], and [Network].

- In Windows 7, open [Computer] and click [Network].  
If [Network] is not displayed in [Computer], click the [Network and Internet] category on the [control panel], and also click [View network computers and devices].  
Connected computers and devices are detected.

## 5 Right click the device name and select [Install].

- To check the device name, select [Network Setting] - [Controller NIC Setting] - [Web Service Setting] - [Print Setting] in [Administrator Settings] of this machine. In the default setting, the last six characters of [printer name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address.  
To check the MAC address, select [Configuration Page]. For details on how to output [Configuration Page], refer to page 15-4.

The printer driver for this machine is detected and this machine is ready to print.

## 6 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] or [Printers] window.

### Reference

- If the printer driver is not correctly installed, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...]. For details, refer to page 5-14.
- In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you can continue the task and specify the printer driver installation disk to install the printer driver if it is not installed in advance. When the [Found New Hardware] window appears, follow the displayed messages to perform the procedure. For details, refer to Steps 11 through 20 in the succeeding section.
- In Windows 7/Server 2008 R2, you cannot specify the installation disk after the machine is connected to the computer. Install the printer driver in advance (Step 1).

## Installing the printer driver by specifying the IP address using the Add Printer Wizard

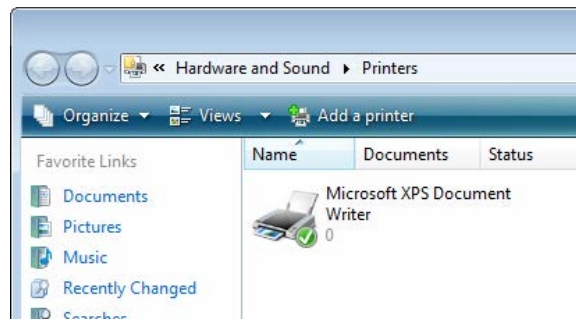
In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you can add a Web service device using the adding printer function of the after connecting this machine.

### Reference

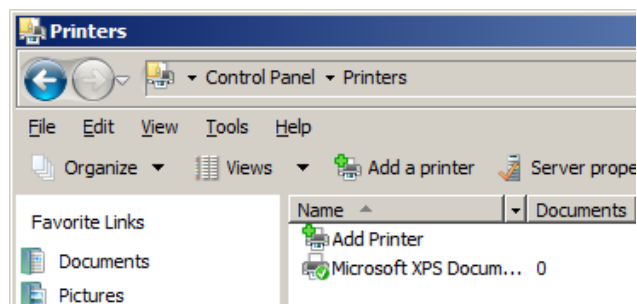
- In Windows 7, a window for specifying an installation disk does not appear after the machine is connected to the computer. Install the printer driver in advance and connect the driver as described in "Making the printer driver known from the Network window".
- ✓ Installing the driver to Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2 based computers requires the administrator authority.

- 1 Turn on the power of the machine while it is connected to the network.  
Since the printer is searched for during the installation, be sure to connect this machine to the network before turning it on.
- 2 To use the Web service print, check that [Network discovery] is enabled in [Network and Sharing Center] on the computer.
- 3 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 4 Click [Start], and then select [Control Panel].  
→ In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Printers] under [Control Panel] - [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 5 Click [Printers] under [Hardware and Sound].  
→ When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 6 Click [Add a printer] on the toolbar.  
→ In Windows Vista:



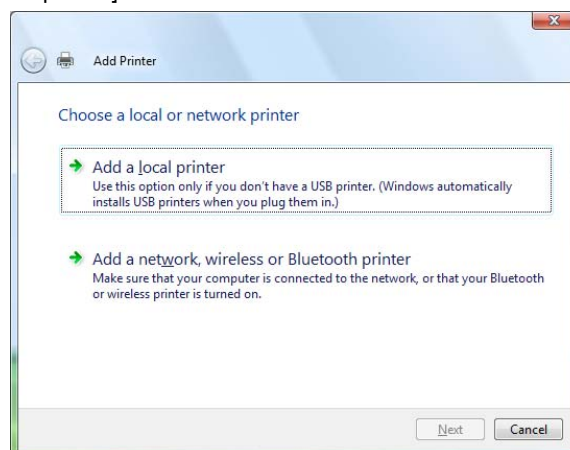


→ <Windows Server 2008/Server 2008 R2>



[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

7 Click [Add a local printer].

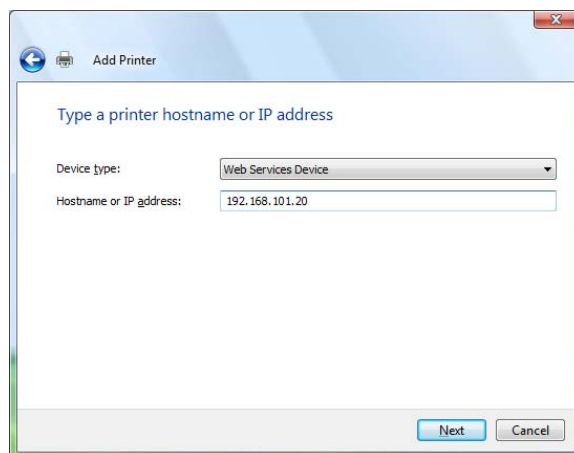


8 Click [Create a new port:], and then select the port type.

→ Select [Standard TCP/IP Port].

9 Click [Next].

- 10** Select [Web Services Device], enter the IP address, and click [Next].



A printer of the entered IP address that is compatible with the Web service print function is located, and then the [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

- 11** Click [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].
- 12** If a dialog box to confirm whether to search online appears, click [Don't search online].
- 13** Click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].
- 14** Click [Browse...].
- 15** Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].
- Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers:  
PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver
- 16** Click [Next].
- 17** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
- If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue].
  - If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 18** Click [Close].
- 19** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] window.
- 20** Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.
- This completes the printer driver installation.

### 5.1.4 For local connection

#### Making the installed printer driver known to the computer

To connect this machine using the USB port in Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, install the printer driver before making it known to the computer with plug and play.

- 1 Install the printer driver for this machine.
  - Install the printer driver using the installer or Add Printer Wizard. To use the Add Printer Wizard, select the USB port to be connected in the [Choose a printer port] page. For details, refer to page 4-7 or page 5-5.
- 2 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable.
- 3 Turn on the power of this machine.
 

The printer driver for this machine is detected and this machine is ready to print.

  - If no printer driver is detected, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn this machine on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- 4 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] or [Printers] window.

#### Reference

- If the printer driver is not correctly installed, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...]. For details, refer to page 5-14.

#### Installing the printer driver when connecting the machine

In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you can install the printer driver after connecting this machine.

#### Reference

- In Windows 7, a window for specifying an installation disk does not appear after the machine is connected to the computer. Install the printer driver in advance and connect the driver as described in "Making the installed printer driver known to the computer".

- 1 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable.
 

**NOTICE**  
*When starting up the computer, do not plug in or unplug the cable.*
- 2 Turn on the power of this machine.
 

The [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

  - The [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn this machine on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- 3 Click [Locate and install driver software (recommended)].
 

The dialog box requesting the disk (CD-ROM) appears.

  - If you do not have the disk (CD-ROM), click [I don't have the disc, show me other options]. On the next page, select [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)], and then specify a desired printer driver folder.
  - Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- 4 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
 

The information on the disk is searched for, and then the list of the software supported by this machine appears.
- 5 Select a desired printer driver name, and then click [Next].
  - Available printer drivers:  
PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver

- 6 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue].
- 7 When the installation completes, click [Close].
- 8 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers] window.
  - If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 9 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

### Updating the driver after connecting this machine

In Windows 7, if this machine is connected without first installing the printer driver, the printer driver will not be correctly identified. In this case, the driver must be updated using [Update Driver...].

- 1 Click [Start] and then [Devices and Printers].
- 2 Right-click the device name of the machine that is under [Unspecified] and then click [Properties].
  - If [Unknown Device] appears instead of the device name of this machine, right-click to remove the device, and install the printer driver. To connect this machine as described in "Making the printer driver known to the compute". For details, refer to page 5-9 or page 5-13.
- 3 In the [Hardware] tab, click [Properties].
- 4 In the [General] tab, click [Change Settings].
- 5 In the [Driver] tab, click [Update Driver...].
- 6 In the page in which to select how to search the driver software, click [Browse my computer for driver software anyway].
- 7 Click [Browse...].
- 8 Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [OK].
  - Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.

Available printer drivers:  
PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver
- 9 Click [Next].
- 10 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - If the [Windows Security] window for verifying the publisher appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 11 Click [Close].
- 12 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Devices and Printers] window.
- 13 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver updating.

#### Reference

- In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, [Update Driver...] is also available. In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, you can specify [Update Driver...] by opening [Properties] for this machine that is listed in [Other Devices] under [Device Manager].

To select [Device Manager], right-click [Computer] and then click [Properties]. Select it in the [Tasks] pane that appears.

## 5.2 Windows XP/Server 2003

### 5.2.1 For network connection (LPR/Port9100)

To use LPR/Port9100 printing, specify the port while installing the printer driver.

#### Settings of this machine

To use Port 9100 or LPR printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP Address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of this machine, specify the IP address.
RAW port number	To use Port 9100 printing: In [TCP/IP Settings] for the machine, enable the RAW port number (default value: [9100]).
LPD Setting	To use LPR printing: In [LPD Setting] for the machine, enable LPD printing.



#### Reference

For details on the network settings for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

#### Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard

✓ Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003-based computers requires the administrator authority.

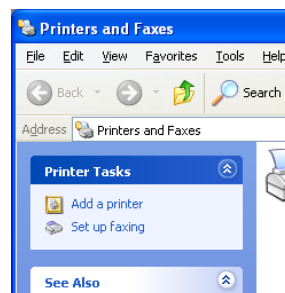
**1** Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

**2** Click [Start], and then select [Printers and Faxes].

→ If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Other Hardware], then click [Printers and Faxes].

**3** In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from the [Printer Tasks] menu.  
In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].

In Windows XP:

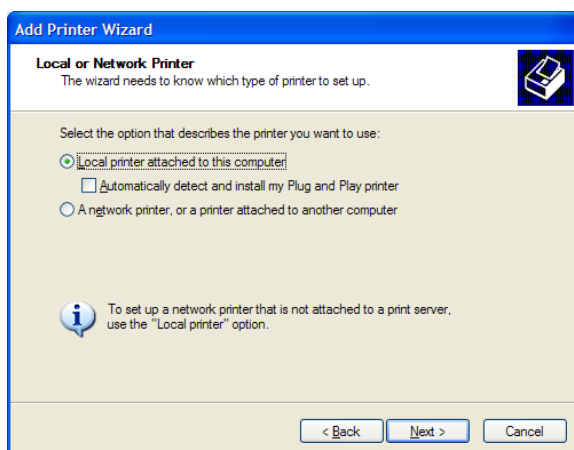


In Windows Server 2003:



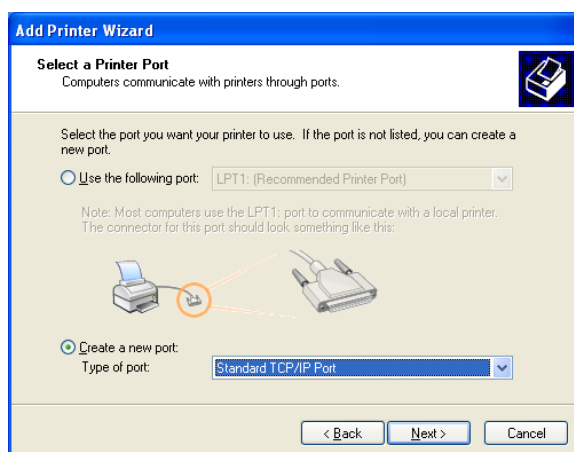
[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 Select [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].

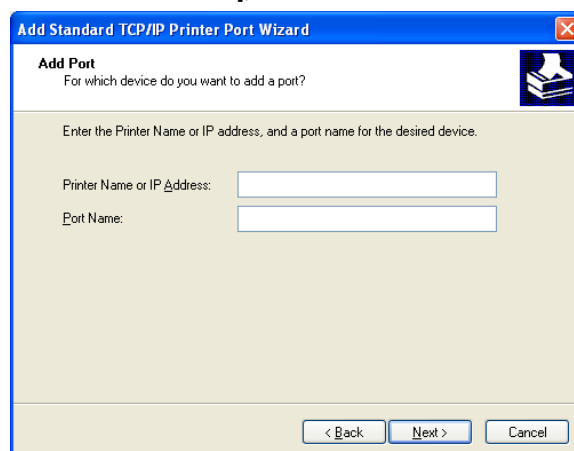


→ Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box.

- 6 Select [Create a new port:], and then select [Standard TCP/IP Port] as the [Type of port:].



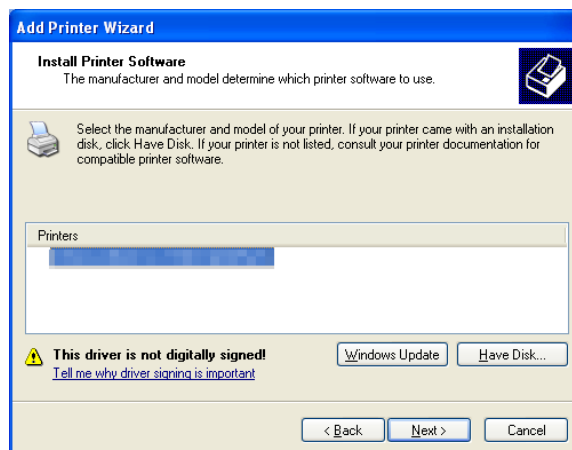
- 7 Click [Next >].
- 8 Click [Next >].
- 9 In the [Printer Name or IP Address:], enter the IP address for this machine, and then click [Next >].



- If the [Additional Port Information Required] dialog box appears, go to Step 10.  
→ If the [Finish] page appears, go to Step 13.

- 10 Select [Custom], and then click [Settings:].
- 11 Change the settings according to the port, and then click [OK].
  - For LPR connection, select [LPR], and then enter "Print" in the [Queue Name:] box.
  - You must discriminate between upper and lower case letters when entering it.
  - For Port9100, select [Raw], and then enter a RAW port number (initial setting: [9100]) in the [Port Number:] box.
- 12 Click [Next >].
- 13 Click [Finish].
- 14 Click [Have Disk...].
- 15 Click [Browse...].
- 16 Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers: PCL driver, PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver
- 17 Click [OK].

The [Printers] list appears.
- 18 Click [Next >].



- 19 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.
  - To use a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been configured.
- 20 Click [Finish].
  - If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].
- 21 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 22 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

### 5.2.2 For network connection (SMB)

To use SMB printing, specify the port by specifying the printer while installing the printer driver. The printer can be specified either by searching for the printer on the network, or by entering the printer name directly.

#### Settings of this machine

To use the SMB printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP Address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of this machine, specify the IP address.
SMB Setting	To use SMB printing: In [SMB Settings] - [Print Settings], specify NetBIOS Name, Print Service Name, and Workgroup.



#### Reference

For details on the network settings for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

To use SMB printing in the IPv6 environment, [Direct Hosting Setting] for the machine should be enabled. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

### Installing the printer driver by specifying the printer using the Add Printer Wizard

✓ Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003-based computers requires the administrator authority.

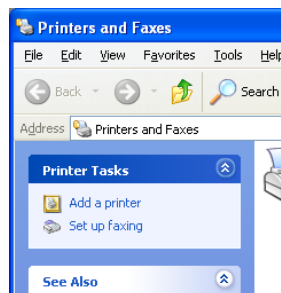
**1** Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

**2** Click [Start], and then select [Printers and Faxes].

→ If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Other Hardware], then click [Printers and Faxes].

**3** In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from the [Printer Tasks] menu.  
In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].

In Windows XP:



In Windows Server 2003:

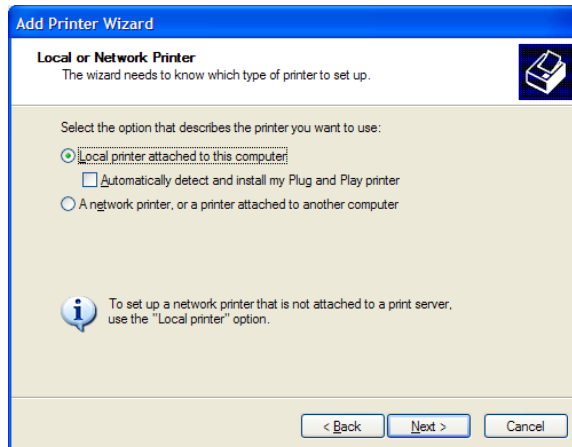


[Add Printer Wizard] appears.

**4** Click [Next >].

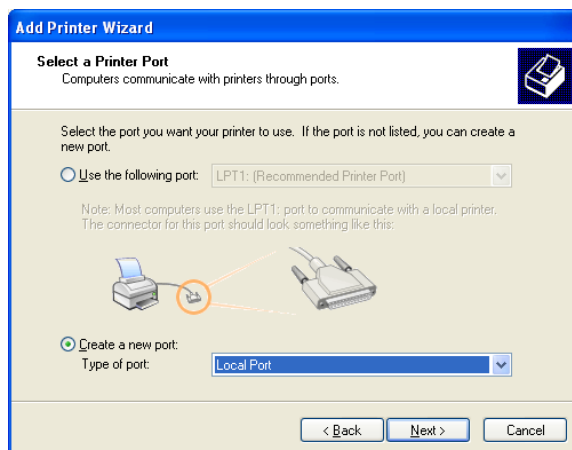


- 5 Select [Local printer attached to this computer], and then click [Next >].



→ Clear the [Automatically detect and install my Plug and Play printer] check box.

- 6 Click [Create a new port:], select [Local Port] as the [Type of port:], and then click [Next >].



- 7 Enter [\\NetBIOS name\print service name] in the "Port Name" box.

→ Enter the same NetBIOS name and print service name specified in[SMB Setting] - [Print Setting].

- 8 Click [OK].

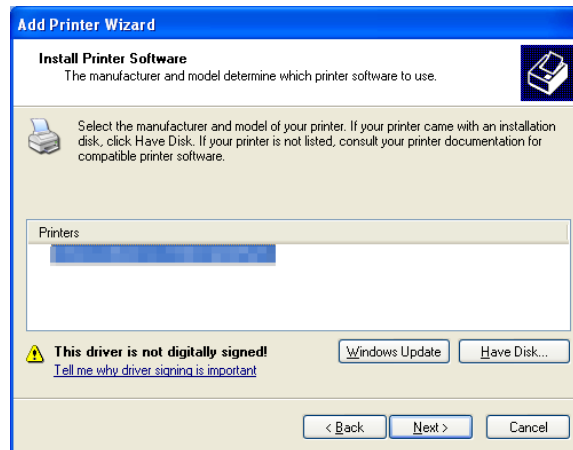
- 9 Click [Have Disk...].

- 10 Click [Browse...].

- 11 Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].

→ Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers: PCL driver, PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver

- 12 Click [OK].

**13** Click [Next >].**14** Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

→ To use a network connection, perform a test print after the network settings have been configured.

**15** Click [Finish].

→ If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].

**16** After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.**17** Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

### 5.2.3 For network connection (IPP/IPPS)

To use IPP printing, specify the port while installing the printer driver.

#### Settings of this machine

To use IPP printing, you must configure the network settings for the machine in advance.

Items to be configured	Description
IP Address	In [TCP/IP Settings] of this machine, specify the IP address.
IPP Setting	In [HTTP Server Setting] for the machine, enable IPP printing.



#### Reference

*For details on the network settings for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".*

*Before you can use IPPS printing, you must register a certificate with this machine. You can use the self-signed certificate that is preinstalled in this machine. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".*

#### Installing the printer driver using the Add Printer Wizard

✓ Installing the driver to Windows XP/Server 2003-based computers requires the administrator authority.

- 1 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Click [Start], and then select [Printers and Faxes].
  - ➔ If [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Other Hardware], then click [Printers and Faxes].
- 3 In Windows XP, select [Add a printer] from the [Printer Tasks] menu.  
In Windows Server 2003, double-click [Add Printer].
- 4 Click [Next >].
- 5 In the [Local or Network Printer] page, select [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer], and then click [Next >].
- 6 In the [Specify a Printer] page, select [Connect to a printer on the Internet or on a home or office network:].
- 7 In the [URL:] field, enter the URL for the machine in the following format, and then click [Next >].
  - ➔ http://<IP address for the machine>/ipp  
Example: When the IP address for the machine is 192.168.1.20, http://192.168.1.20/ipp
  - ➔ When specifying to use IPPS printing, enter "https://<IP address for the machine>/ipp".
  - ➔ If a confirmation dialog box appears after clicking [Next >], click [OK].
- 8 Click [Have Disk...].
- 9 Click [Browse...].
- 10 Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [Open].
  - ➔ Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers: PCL driver, PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver
- 11 Click [OK].  
The [Printers] list appears.
- 12 Click [OK].
- 13 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

- 14 Click [Finish].
  - If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].
- 15 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 16 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.

Once the settings for the printer have been configured, you can use the printer in the same way as a general local printer.

#### 5.2.4 For local connection

When this machine is connected via a USB port, the printer driver can be installed with plug and play.

##### Reference

- When a USB connection is used, the printer driver is installed easily with the plug and play feature. However, it can also be installed using the Add Printer Wizard. To use the Add Printer Wizard, select the USB port to be connected in the [Choose a printer port] page.

- 1 Connect this machine to the computer using a USB cable.

##### **NOTICE**

*When starting up the computer, do not plug in or unplug the cable.*

- 2 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

- 3 Turn on the power of this machine.

The [Found New Hardware Wizard] window appears.

- If the [Found New Hardware Wizard] window does not appear, turn this machine off, then on again. In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.
- If a page with a message saying "Windows connect to Windows Update" appears, select [No, not this time].

- 4 Select [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].

- 5 Under [Search for the best driver in these locations.], select [Include this location in the search:], and then click [Browse].

- 6 Select a desired printer driver folder in the CD-ROM, and then click [OK].

- Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used. Available printer drivers: PCL driver, PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver

- 7 Click [Next >], and then follow the instructions on the pages that follow.

- 8 Click [Finish].

- If the "Windows logo testing" or [Digital Signature] window appears, click [Continue Anyway] or [Yes].

- 9 After finishing the installation, make sure that the icon for the installed printer is displayed in the [Printers and Faxes] window.

- 10 Remove the CD-ROM from the CD-ROM drive.

This completes the printer driver installation.



## **Installation on Macintosh Computers**

## 6 Installation on Macintosh Computers

This chapter describes the settings necessary when using Macintosh and the procedure for installing printer drivers for Macintosh.

### 6.1 Printer Driver for Mac OS

The following 2 printer drivers support Mac OS.

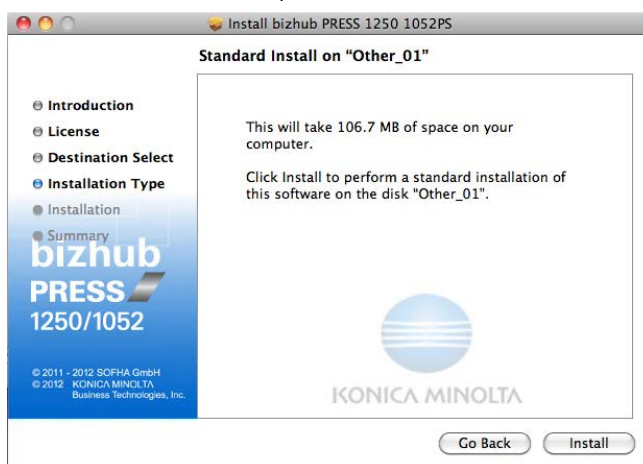
- PS Plug-in Driver
- PS PPD driver

#### 6.1.1 Installing the PS Plug-in driver

- ✓ When the PS Plug-in driver has been installed, you must delete it before you install. For details on deleting the printer driver, refer to page 8-5.

- 1 Start the Macintosh computer.
- 2 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.  
→ Exit all running applications, if any.
- 3 Open the folder in the CD-ROM that contains the desired printer driver.  
→ Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.
- 4 Copy [bizhub PRESS 1250 1052PS.pkg] on the desktop.
- 5 Double-click the file copied onto the desktop.  
The installer starts.  
→ To cancel installation, press [Cancel].
- 6 Click [Continue] following the instructions on the pages that follow until the [Installation] page appears.  
→ When the name and password prompt appears during the procedure, enter the administrator name and password.
- 7 In the [Installation] page, click [Install].

The printer driver is installed in the computer. When the installation is completed, a message appears.



- For OS X 10.4, when the printer driver is installed for the second and subsequent times, [Install] may change to [Upgrade].
- In [Install] screen, we do not use [Change] at this time although it becomes available when you use multiple internal hard disks.

- 8 Click [Close].

This completes the printer driver installation.

Then select printer and connect to it. (Refer to page 6-4.)

## 6.1.2 Installing the PS PPD driver

- ✓ When the PS Plug-in driver has been installed, you must delete it before you install. For details on deleting the printer driver, refer to page 8-5.

- 1 Start the Macintosh computer.

- 2 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

→ Exit all running applications, if any.

- 3 Open the folder in the CD-ROM that contains the desired printer driver.

→ Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.

- 4 Select the printer driver to use according to OS and copy it on the desktop

Three digit number at the end of the package file name for the printer driver represents compatible OS. For example, [106] means that it is compatible with OS X 10.6.

→ KONICAMINOLTA\_1250\_xxx.pkg

- 5 Double-click the file copied onto the desktop.

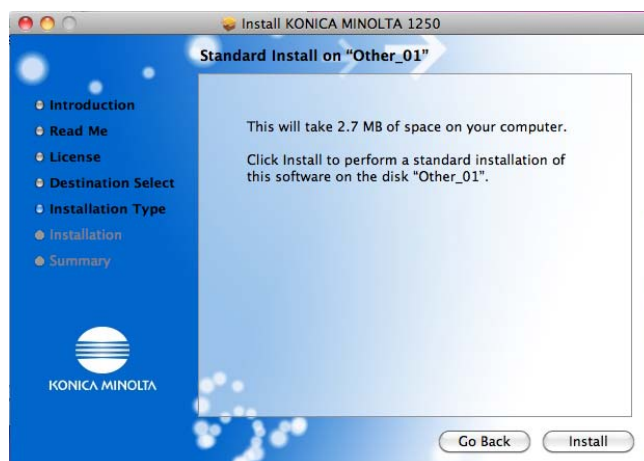
The installer starts.

→ To cancel installation, press [Cancel].

- 6 Click [Continue] following the instructions on the pages that follow until the [Installation] page appears.

→ When the name and password prompt appears during the procedure, enter the administrator name and password.

- 7 In the [Installation] page, click [Install].



The printer driver is installed in the computer. When the installation is completed, a message appears.

→ For OS X 10.4, when the printer driver is installed for the second and subsequent times, [Install] may change to [Upgrade].

- 8 Click [Close].

This completes the printer driver installation.

Next, select a printer. (Refer to page 6-4.)

### 6.1.3 Selecting and connecting a printer

The printer can be connected with Bonjour, LPR (LPD), or IPP.

In OS X 10.4/10.5, the printer can also be connected using AppleTalk.

After configuring the network setting for this machine, selecting this machine as the printer to be used in the [Print & Fax] window enables printing.

### Configuring the Bonjour settings

Configuring the Bonjour Setting for this machine

To use Bonjour, enable Bonjour in [Bonjour Setting] for this machine and then enter the Bonjour name.



#### Reference

For details on [Bonjour Setting] for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

### Adding a printer

1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].

2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.

3 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.

4 Click [Default].

Connected printers are detected.

→ If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again.

In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.

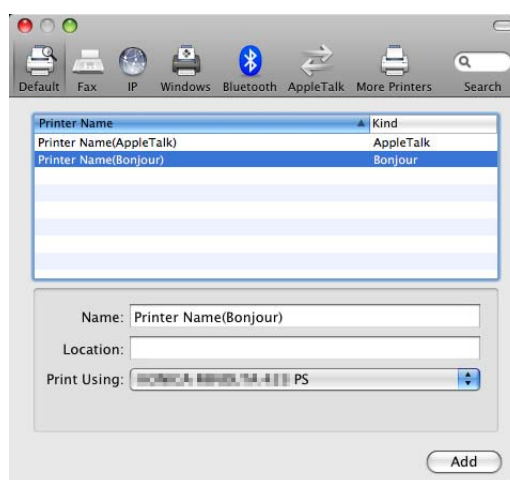
5 From the [Printer Name] list, select the desired Bonjour-connected model name.

The printer driver corresponding to the selected printer name is automatically selected.

→ You can check the printer name by selecting [Administrator Setting] - [Network Setting] - [Controller NIC Setting Menu] - [Bonjour Setting]. In the default setting, the contents enclosed in parentheses ( ) suffixed in [Bonjour Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name(Bonjour)".

→ After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.

→ If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 6.



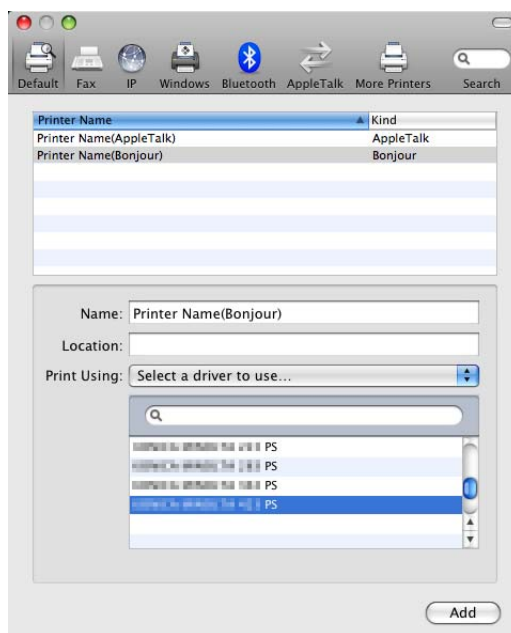
6 Select the desired printer driver manually.

→ When OS X 10.6 is used, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list that is displayed in another window.

→ When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.



- When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.



- Select the printer driver that has the following name.  
 PS Plug-in driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052PS  
 PS PPD driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052 PS(P)

## 7 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.

### Reference

- For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

## Configuring the AppleTalk settings

Configuring the AppleTalk for this machine

To use AppleTalk, enable Bonjour in [AppleTalk Settings] for this machine and then enter the printer name.

### Important

- Mac OS X 10.6 does not support AppleTalk.



### Reference

For details on [AppleTalk setting] for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

## Configuring AppleTalk Setting for the computer

Configure the AppleTalk settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
  - For OS X 10.5, select [Ethernet], and then click [Advanced...].
  - For OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], and then click [Configure...].
- 4 Double-click the [AppleTalk] tab to enable AppleTalk.
- 5 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply].

## Adding a printer

1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].

2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.

3 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.

4 Click [Default].

Connected printers are detected.

→ If no printer is detected, turn this machine off, then on again.

In this case, turn off this machine, and then wait approximately 10 seconds before turning it on again. If you turn the printer on immediately after turning it off, it may not function correctly.

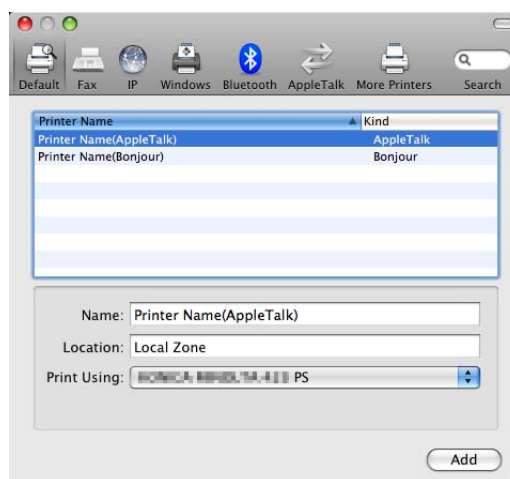
5 From the [Printer Name] list, select the desired AppleTalk-connected model name.

The printer driver corresponding to the selected printer name is automatically selected.

→ You can check the printer name by selecting [Administrator Setting] - [Network Setting] - [Controller NIC Setting Menu] - [AppleTalk Setting]. In the Default setting, the last six letters of [Printer Name] correspond to the low-order three bytes of the MAC address. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name(AppleTalk)".

→ After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.

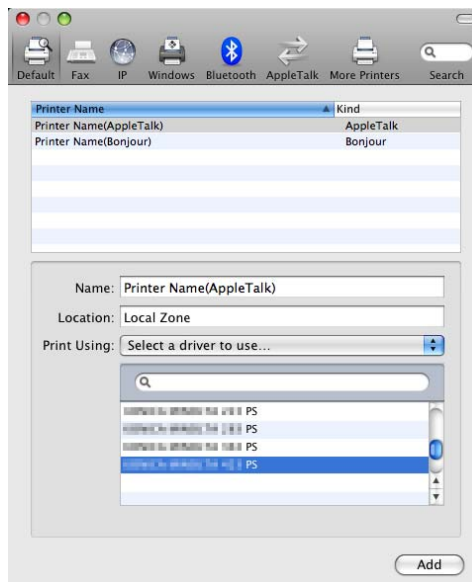
→ If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 6.



6 Select the desired printer driver manually.

→ When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.

→ When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.



- Select the printer driver that has the following name.  
 PS Plug-in driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052PS  
 PS PPD driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052 PS(P)

## 7 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.

### Reference

- For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

## Configuring the LPR settings

Configuring the TCP/IP Setting for this machine

Specify the IP address for this machine.

Configuring the LPD Setting for this machine

To use LPR printing, enable LPR printing in [LPD Setting] for this machine.



### Reference

*For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".*

*For details on [LPD Setting] for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".*

## Configuring TCP/IP Setting for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
  - For OS X 10.5/10.6, select [Ethernet], and then click [Advanced...].
  - For OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], and then click [Configure...].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings of the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.

→ When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply].

## Adding a printer

**1** In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].

**2** Click the [Print & Fax] icon.

**3** Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.

**4** Click [IP] or [IP Printer].

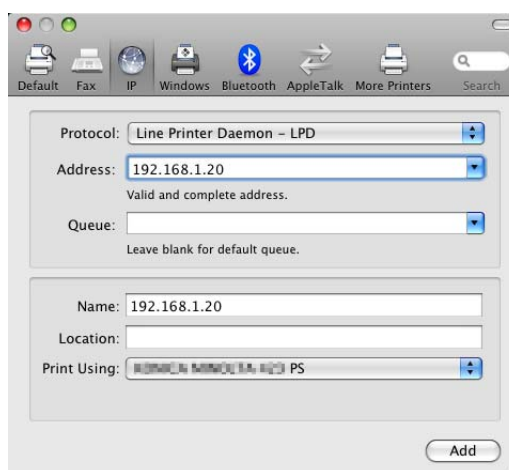
**5** In [Protocol:], select [Line Printer Daemon - LPD].

**6** In [Address:], enter the IP address for this machine.

The printer driver corresponding to this machine being identified with its IP address is automatically selected.

→ After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 8.

→ If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.

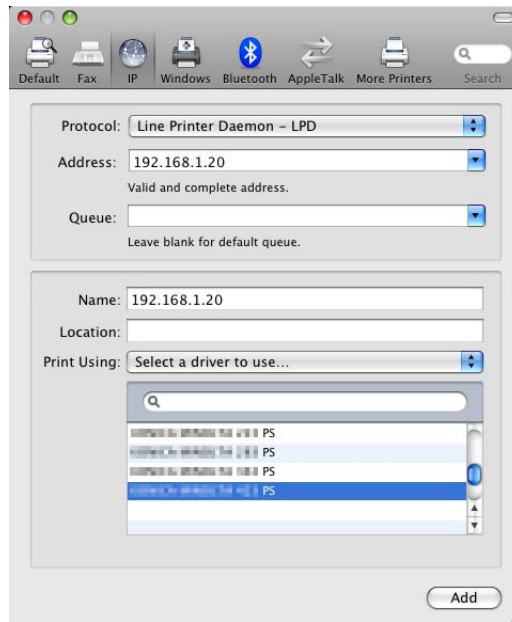


**7** Select the desired printer driver manually.

→ When OS X 10.6 is used, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list that is displayed in another window.

→ When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.

→ When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.



- Select the printer driver that has the following name.  
 PS Plug-in driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052PS  
 PS PPD driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052 PS(P)

## 8 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.

### Reference

- For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.

## Configuring the IPP settings

Configuring the TCP/IP Setting for this machine

Specify the IP address for this machine.

Configuring HTTP Server Setting for this machine

In [HTTP Server Setting] for the machine, enable IPP printing.



### Reference

For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

For details on [HTTP Server Setting] for this machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

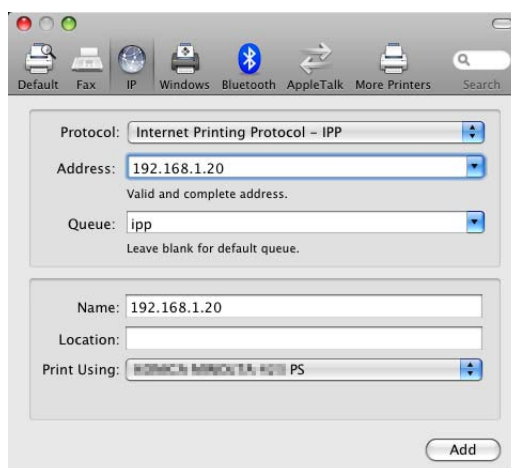
## Configuring TCP/IP Setting for the computer

Configure the TCP/IP settings for the Macintosh computer connected to the printer.

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Network] icon.
- 3 The Ethernet setting window appears.
  - For OS X 10.5/10.6, select [Ethernet], and then click [Advanced...].
  - For OS X 10.4, select [Built-in Ethernet], and then click [Configure...].
- 4 Click the [TCP/IP] tab.
- 5 Configure the settings including the IP address and subnet mask according to the settings of the network to which the Macintosh computer is connected.
- 6 Click the close button at the top left corner of the window.
  - When the [This service has unsaved changes] message appears, click [Apply].

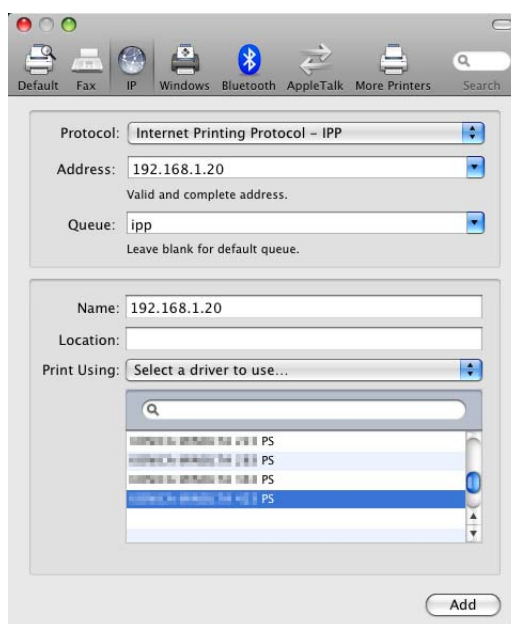
## Adding a printer

- 1 In the [Apple Menu], select [System Preferences...].
- 2 Click the [Print & Fax] icon.
- 3 Click [+] on the [Print & Fax] window.  
[Printer Browser] appears.
- 4 Click [IP] or [IP Printer].
- 5 In [Protocol:], select [Internet Printing Protocol - IPP].
- 6 In [Address:], enter the IP address for this machine. In [Queue:], enter "ipp".  
The printer driver corresponding to this machine being identified with its IP address is automatically selected.
  - After the printer driver is selected, go to Step 8.
  - If an incorrect printer driver is selected, go to Step 7.



- 7 Select the desired printer driver manually.
  - When OS X 10.6 is used, select [Select Printer Software...] from [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list that is displayed in another window.
  - When OS X 10.5 is used, select the [Select a driver to use...] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.

- When OS X 10.4 is used, select [KONICA MINOLTA] from the [Print Using:], and then select the printer driver of the desired model name from the list.



- Select the printer driver that has the following name.  
 PS Plug-in driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052PS  
 PS PPD driver: KONICA MINOLTA 1250/1052 PS(P)

## 8 Click [Add].

When the selected printer is registered in the [Print & Fax], the setting procedure is completed.

## Reference

- For OS X 10.4, you can also add a printer by clicking [Add] in the [Printer Setup Utility] window.



## **Installation when Using NetWare**



## 7 Installation when Using NetWare

This chapter describes the settings necessary when using NetWare and the procedure for installing printer drivers for the Windows client.

### 7.1 NetWare

#### 7.1.1 Network Settings

In the [NetWare Settings] screen for this machine, specify [IPX Setting] and [NetWare Print Mode].



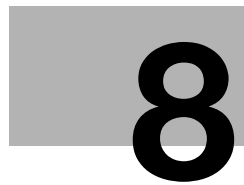
#### Reference

*For details on "NetWare Setting" for this machine, refer to User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference.*

#### 7.1.2 Configuring the Windows client

For the Windows client that uses a printer, install the printer driver using the [Add Printer Wizard].

- ✓ Administrator authority is required for installation.
- 1 Insert the Driver CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2 Open the [Devices and Printers], [Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 3 Click [Add printer] or [Install printer].  
[Add Printer Wizard] appears.
- 4 In the port settings, browse the network and specify the name of the created queue (or NDPS printer name).
- 5 From the printer model list, specify the desired folder in the CD-ROM that contains the printer driver.
  - ➔ Select a folder according to the printer driver, operating system, and language to be used.  
Available printer drivers:  
Windows XP/Server 2003: PCL driver, PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver  
Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7: PS Plug-in driver, PPD driver, PCL driver
- 6 Follow the instructions on the pages that follow to complete the installation.



## Uninstalling the Printer Driver

## 8 Uninstalling the Printer Driver

This chapter describes the procedure for uninstalling the printer driver.

### 8.1 Windows

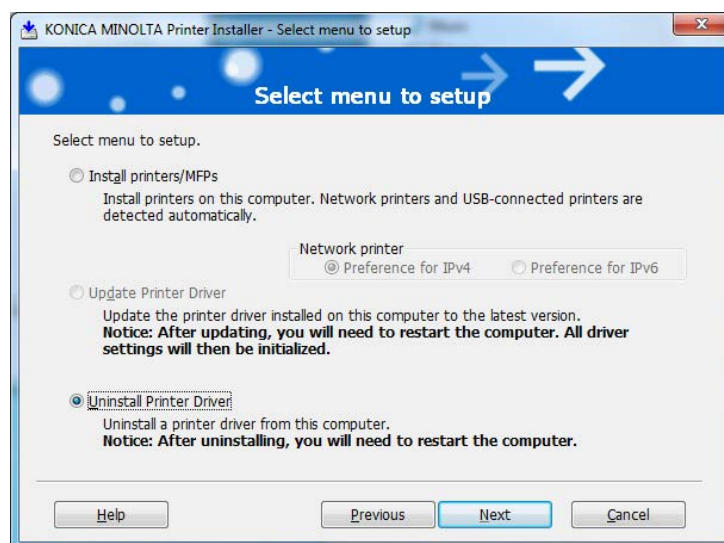
When you have to remove the printer driver, for example, when reinstallation of the printer driver is necessary, remove the Windows driver using the following procedure.

#### 8.1.1 Uninstalling by the installer (PCL driver)

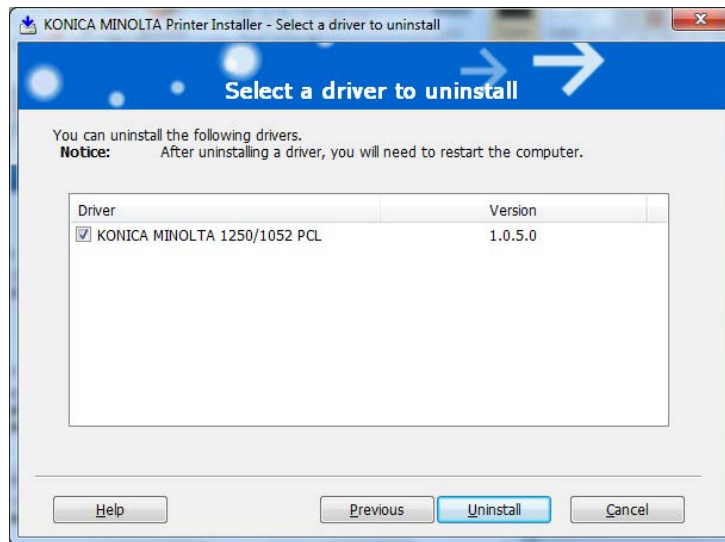
The printer driver can be deleted by the installer.

- 1 Insert the Printer Driver CD-ROM for Windows into the CD-ROM drive of the computer.
  - Make sure that the installer starts, and then go to Step 2.
  - If the installer does not start, open the printer driver folder on the CD-ROM, double-click [Setup.exe], and then go to Step 3.
- 2 Click [Install Printer Driver].

The installer of the printer driver starts.
- 3 Click the [AGREE].
- 4 In the setup selection dialog box, select the [Uninstall Printer Driver], and then click the [Next].



- 5 Select the component to be deleted, and then click the [Uninstall].



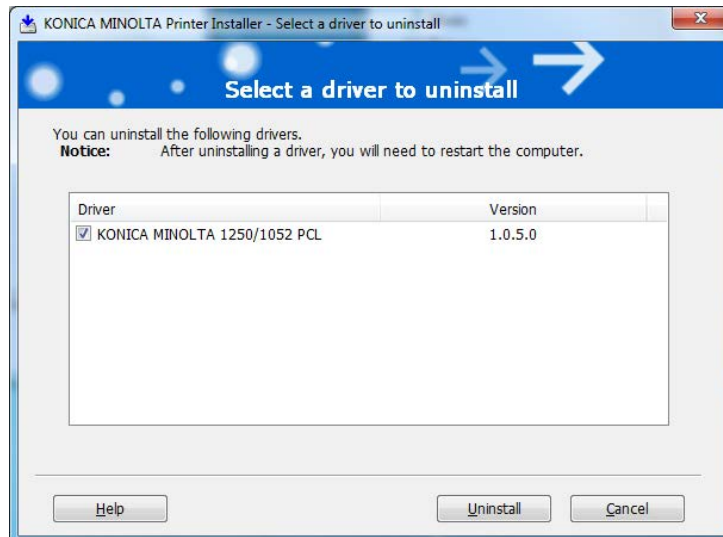
→ Follow the on-screen instructions.

- 6 If the restart screen appears, click [OK] to restart the computer.

### 8.1.2 Uninstalling by the uninstallation program (PCL driver)

If the printer driver was installed with an installer, the uninstallation program is implemented to the computer.

- 1 Select [Start] - [Programs] (or [All Programs]) - [KONICA MINOLTA] - [bizhub PRESS 1250 1052] - [Uninstall PCL printer driver].
- 2 Select the component to be uninstalled and click [Uninstall].



→ Follow the on-screen instructions.

- 3 If the restart screen appears, click [OK] to restart the computer.

### 8.1.3 Uninstalling by manual operation (PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver/PCL driver)

- 1 Open the [Devices and Printers], [Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
- 2 Select the icon for the printer to be uninstalled.
- 3 Remove the printer driver.
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, press the **Delete** key on the computer keyboard.
  - In Windows 7, click [Remove device] on the toolbar.
- 4 From then on, follow the instructions on the pages that follow.  
 Once the printer driver is deleted, the icon disappears from the [Devices and Printers], [Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.  
 In Windows XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, go on to remove the printer driver from the server properties.
- 5 Open [Server Properties].
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, right-click on the area that has nothing displayed in the [Printers] window, click [Run as administrator] - [Server Properties].
  - In Windows 7, select other printer, and click [Print Server Properties] on the toolbar.
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, click the [File] menu and then click [Server Properties].
  - If the [User Account Control] window appears, click [Continue] or [Yes].
- 6 Click the [Driver] tab.
- 7 From the [Installed printer drivers:] list, select the printer driver to be removed, and then click [Remove...].
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, go to Step 8.
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, go to Step.
- 8 Select [Remove driver and driver package.] or [Remove driver and driver package.] in the dialog box for confirming deletion target, and then click [OK].
- 9 In the dialog box for confirming if you are sure to remove the printer, click [Yes].
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, the dialog box appears to reconfirm if you are sure. Click [Uninstall].
- 10 Close the open windows, and then restart the computer.
  - Be sure to restart the computer.
 This completes removing the printer driver.

#### Reference

- In Windows XP/Server 2003, even if the printer driver is deleted using the preceding method, the model information file will remain in the computer. For this reason, when reinstalling the same version of the printer driver, the driver may not be rewritten. In this case, remove the following files as well.
- Confirm "C:\WINDOWS\system32\spool\drivers\w32x86" folder (in case of x64 system, "C:\WINDOWS\system32\spool\drivers\x64" folder) and remove the applicable model if any. If more than one printer driver is installed, the model information for all drivers is deleted. To leave other drivers, do not remove the folder.
- From the "C:\WINDOWS\inf" folder, remove "oem\*.inf" and "oem\*.PNF" ( "\*" included in the file name indicates a number, which differs depending on the computer environment).  
 Before removing these files, open the inf file, and then check the model name described on the last few lines to confirm it is the file for the corresponding model. The number of the PNF file is the same as that of the inf file.
- When you have deleted a file using [Remove driver and driver package.] or [Remove driver and driver package.] in Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7, this operation is not required.

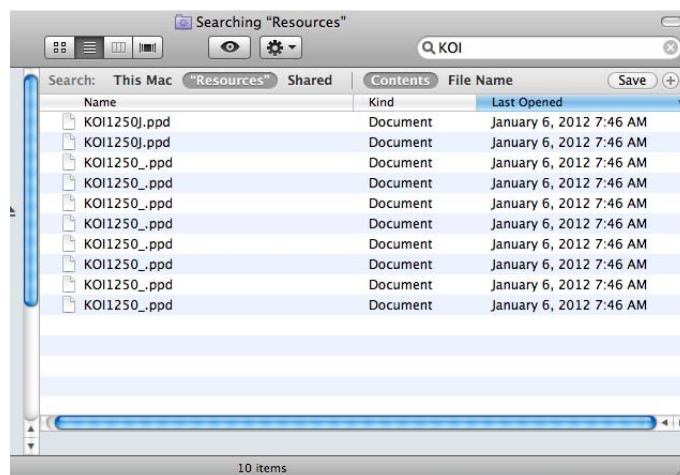
## 8.2 Macintosh

When the printer driver has fault or is to be updated, the printer driver should be removed. Delete the printer driver according to the following procedure.

### 8.2.1 Uninstalling by manual operation (PS Plug-in driver)

- 1 Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]) window.
  - The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in [Apple Menu] (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6).
  - The [Printer Setup Utility] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] - [Applications] - [Utilities] (OS X 10.4).
- 2 Select the printer name to be deleted, and then click [-] (or [Delete]).  
The selected printer is deleted.
- 3 Close the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]) window.
- 4 Drag the following files, which are located in [Library] - [Printers] - [PPDs] - [Contents] - [Resources] for the installed [Macintosh HD], to the [Trash] icon.
  - [KOI1250J.ppd]
  - [KOI1250\_.ppd]

Reference  
You can find easy by entering [KOI] in the text box for search and selecting "Resources" as search place.



- 5 Delete unnecessary files from [Library] - [Printers].  
Drag the following files, which are located in [Library] - [Printers] - [KONICA\_MINOLTA], to the [Trash] icon.
  - pstobizhub\_PRESS\_1250
  - bizhub\_PRESS\_1250.plugin
  - bizhub\_PRESS\_1250.icns
- 6 For OS X 10.4/10.5, drag [bizhub PRESS 1250 1052PS.pkg], which is located in [Library] - [Receipts], to the [Trash] icon.
- 7 Drag the following files, which are located in [Macintosh HD] - [Users] - [User Name] - [Library] - [Preferences] to the [Trash] icon.
  - com.apple.print.custompapers.plist
  - com.apple.print.custompresets.plist

For 10.6

  - bizhub PRESS 1250 Printer Driver x86\_64 Preferences

For 10.5/10.4 (Intel Processor)

→ bizhub PRESS 1250 Printer Driver x86 Preferences

For 10.5/10.4 (Compatible to Power PC)

→ bizhub PRESS 1250 Printer Driver PPC Preferences

<Note>

Depending on the driver setting, the above file may not be displayed.

[User Name] is the account name selected at the time of login.

**8** Restart the computer.

This completes removing the printer driver.

## 8.2.2 Uninstalling by manual operation (PS PPD driver)

- 1** Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]) window.
  - The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in [Apple Menu] (OS X 10.5/10.6).
  - The [Printer Setup Utility] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] - [Applications] - [Utilities] (OS X 10.4).
- 2** Select the printer name to be deleted, and then click [-] (or [Delete]).  
The selected printer is deleted.
- 3** Close the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]) window.
- 4** Drag the following files, which are located in [Library] - [Printers] - [PPDs] - [Contents] - [Resources] - [en.lproj] for the installed [Macintosh HD], to the [Trash] icon.
  - "KONICAMINOLTA1250.gz"

Reference  
You can find easy by entering [KONICAMINOLTA].
- 5** Delete unnecessary files from [Library] - [Printers].
  - Drag the following files, which are located in [Library] - [Printers] - [KONICAMINOLTA] - [1250], to the [Trash] icon.
  - pstokm1250
  - KONICA MINOLTA 1250 Security.plugin
  - KONICA MINOLTA 1250 Finishing.plugin
  - KONICA MINOLTA 1250 ImageLayout.plugin
  - KONICA MINOLTA 1250 Setup.plugin
- 6** Drag the following files, which are located in [Library] - [Receipt], to the [Trash] icon.
  - KONICAMINOLTA\_1250\_xxx.pkg
- 7** Restart the computer.  
This completes removing the printer driver.



## **Basic Printing Methods and Printer Functions**



## 9 Basic Printing Methods and Printer Functions

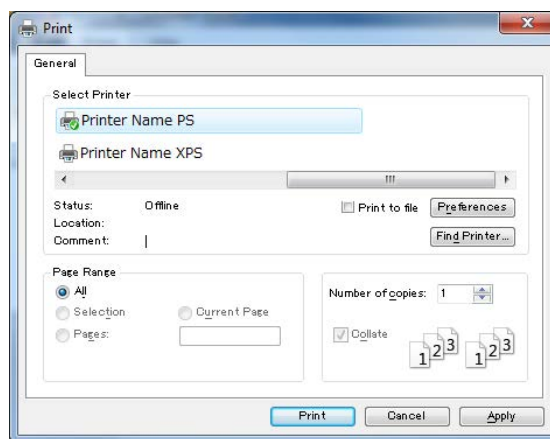
This chapter describes the basic printing methods from an application and the printer functions.

### 9.1 Print operations

Print jobs are specified from the application software.

#### Basic printing method (Windows)

- 1 Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print] from the menu.  
→ If the menu is not available, click [Print].
- 2 Check that the printer name has been selected in [Printer Name] (or [Select Printer]).  
→ If the printer is not selected, click to select the printer.  
→ The [Print] dialog box differs depending on the application.  
→ The printer name varies depending on the installation method. You can also change the printer name. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name PS".



- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.
- 4 Click [Properties] (or [Preferences]) to change the printer driver settings as necessary.  
→ Clicking [Properties] or [Preferences] in the [Print] window displays the [Printing Preferences] page of the printer driver where you can configure various functions. For details, refer to page 11-2, page 12-2, and page 10-2.  
→ [Printing Preferences] of the printer driver changed in the [Print] window are not saved, and the original settings are restored when you exit the application.
- 5 Click [Print].  
The printing is started.

#### Reference

- You can check a job that was scanned using this machine in the [Job List] screen. For details, refer to page 16-14.

## Basic printing method (Mac OS X)

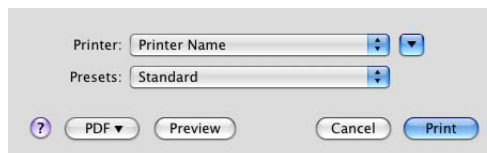
- 1 Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print] from the menu.

→ If the menu is not available, click [Print].

The [Print] window appears.

- 2 Check that the desired printer name is selected in [Printer:].

→ If the target printer is not selected, select it.




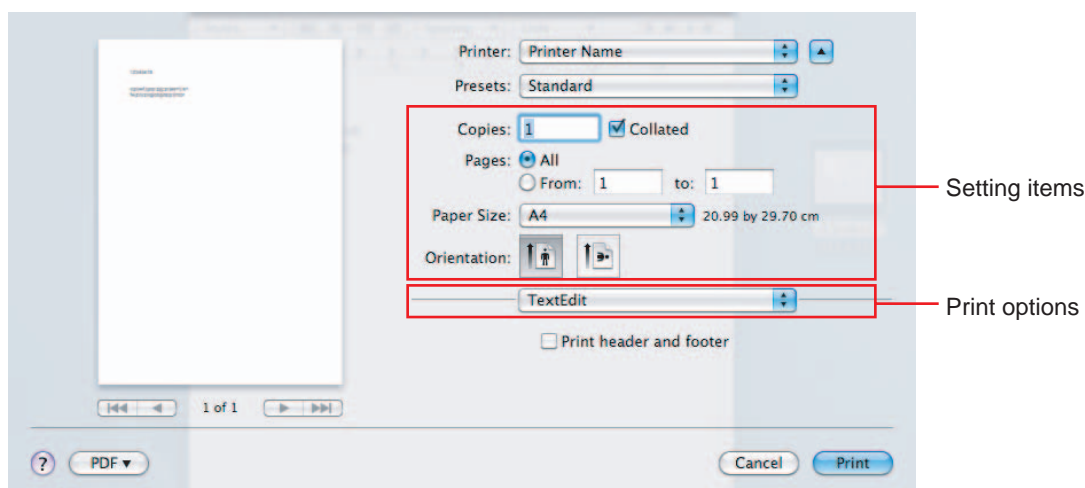
→ If the printer does not appear, select the printer from [Print & Fax] or [Printer Setup Utility]. For details, refer to page 6-4.

→ The [Print] window varies depending on the application software.

→ You can also change the printer name. The following window shows an example where the printer name is changed to "Printer Name".

- 3 Specify the print range and the number of copies to print.

→ When the setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5/10.6, click  on the right side of [Printer:].



- 4 Switch the setting window as necessary to change the printer driver settings.

→ For PS Plug-in driver, when you select [bizhub PRESS 1250/1052PS] from the pane pop-up menu and click the [Set], Printing Preferences screen appears. You can specify several settings on this screen. For details, refer to page 11-3.

→ For PPD driver, when you change the pane pop-up menu, other setting screen for printer driver appears. You can specify several settings on this screen. For details, refer to page 13-2.

- 5 Click [Print].

The printing is started.

### Reference

- You can check a job that was scanned using this machine in the [Job List] screen. For details, refer to page 16-14.

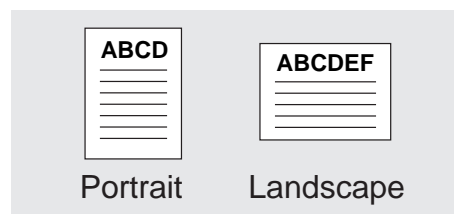
## 9.2 Printer Functions

This section describes various printer functions. For details on each function, refer to the corresponding page shown in "Reference".

### 9.2.1 Setting paper

#### Setting the print orientation

In this printing system, you can set the printing orientation of the output paper either in [Portrait] or [Landscape].



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-5
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-6
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-5
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-6

#### Setting the paper size for the output paper

In this printing system, you can set the output paper in various sizes.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-5
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-5
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-6

#### Setting the paper type

In this printing system, you can set the output paper in various paper types.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-13
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-7
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-13
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

## Setting paper color

In this printing system, you can specify the color of paper for printing.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-13
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-13
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

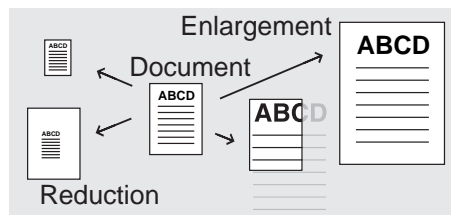
## Setting the pre-punched paper

In this printing system, you can specify the pre-punched paper for printing.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-13
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-13
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

## Enlarging/reducing an original by specifying a value

In this printing system, you can specify the magnification scale with a value for printing.

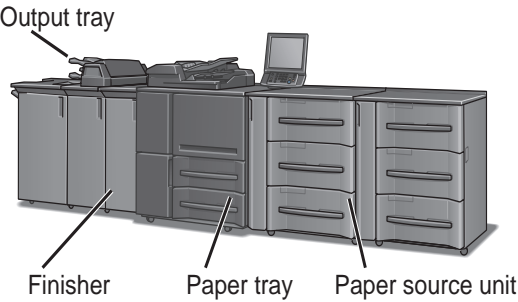


Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-6

9.2.2 Setting a paper tray

Setting a paper source unit

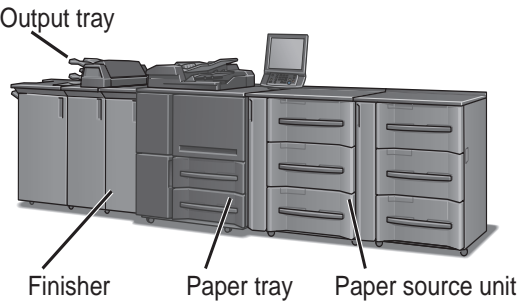
In this printing system, you can register an optional paper source unit (a large capacity tray) in a printer driver.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-3
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-3
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-2

Setting a paper tray

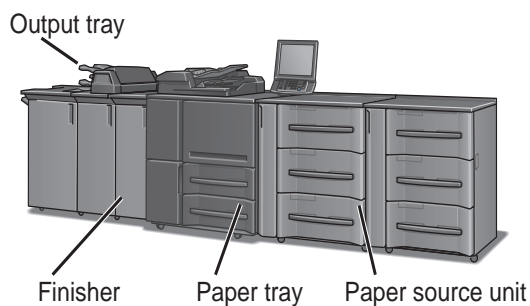
In this printing system, you can select a paper tray to use from a list.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-5
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-7
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-5

## Setting a paper output unit

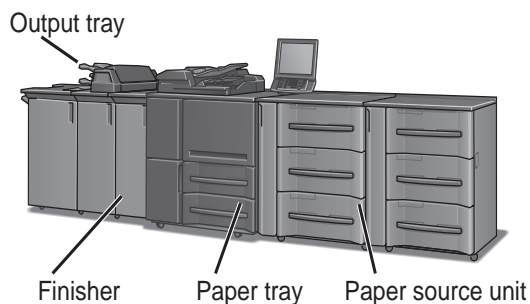
In this printing system, you can register an optional paper output unit in a printer driver.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-3
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-3
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-2

## Setting an output tray

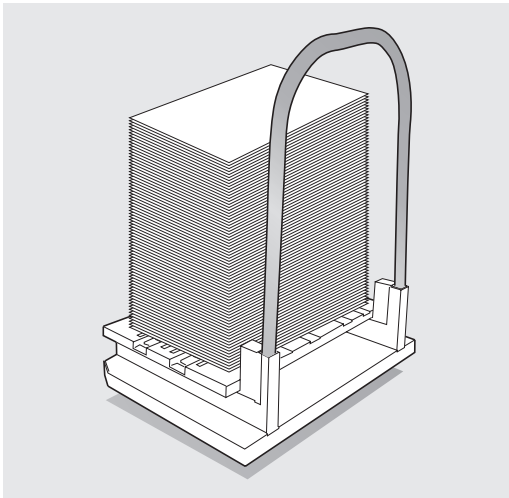
In this printing system, you can select an output tray to use from a list.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-20
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

To set the Stacker:

This printing system enables you to stack a large amount of printed materials on the stacker. You can move around the stacker like a dolly.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-3
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-3
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-2

### 9.2.3 Printing a number of sets of an original

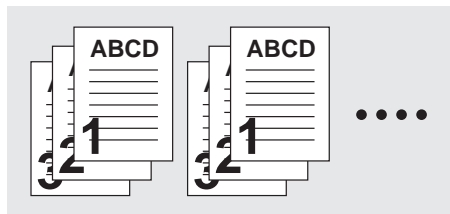
#### Setting a number of copies

In this printing system, you can set a number of copies in the property screen.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 9-2
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 9-2
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 9-3
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-7

#### Printing an original by set (Sort)

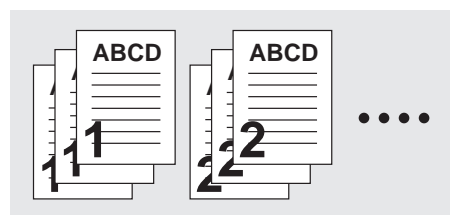
In this printing system, you can print a complete set of an original and repeat the printing of the set for a specified number of times if you want to print more than one set of the original.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 9-2
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

#### Printing an original in a collating order

In this printing system, you can print a specified number of sets of an original page by page.

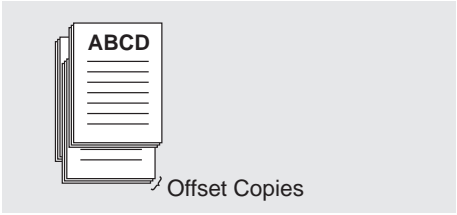


Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 9-2
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8



Offsetting outputted copies by each unit (Offset)

In this printing system, you can offset the outputted copies back and forth in a unit of set or page group when printing more than one set of an original.

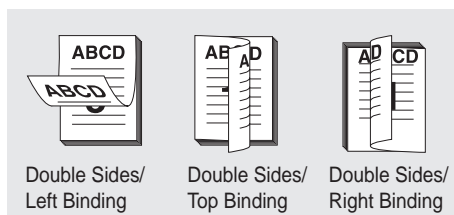


Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

### 9.2.4 Printing more than one page

#### Setting a 2-sided printing

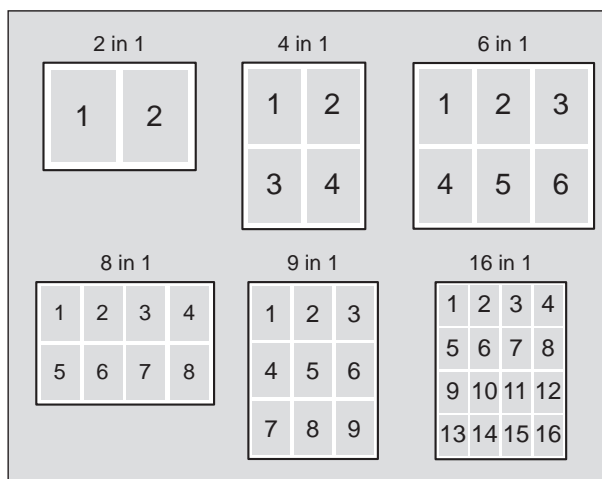
In this printing system, you can print a sequence of pages in both front and back sides of paper.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

#### Printing more than one page in a sheet of paper (Combination/Layout)

In this printing system, you can print 2, 4, 6, 8, 9 or 16 pages in a sheet of paper.



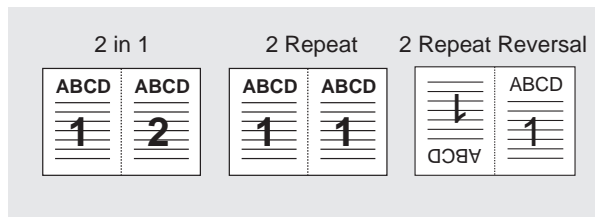
Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-6
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7

#### Reference

- Only "PS Plug-in driver" can impose 8 pages per one page.

## Printing 2 pages in a double-sized sheet of paper (Combination)

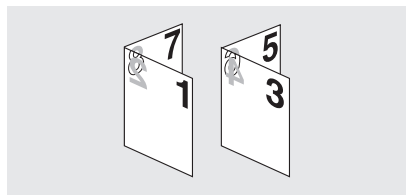
In this printing system, you can print 2 pages in a sheet of which size is double than that specified as the output paper.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

## Printing a booklet for folding into two (Booklet)

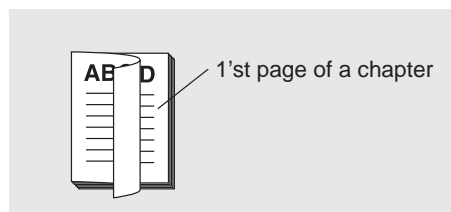
In this printing system, you can print an original in order of pages for creating a booklet when it is folded into two.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-7
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

## Printing in chapters (Chapter)

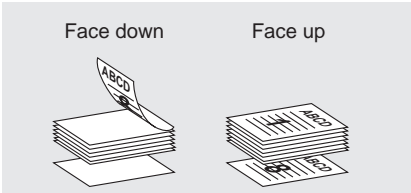
You can print an original with the specified page to be a front side at 2-sided printing.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-17
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-17

Outputting pages with their faces up (Face Up)

In this printing system, you can output paper with the printed side facing up.

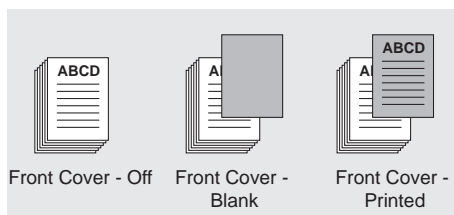


Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-20
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

## 9.2.5 Setting a front cover, back cover, interleaved, and cover

### Setting a front cover

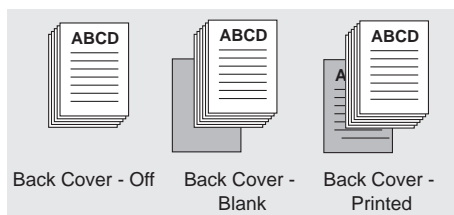
In this printing system, you can set a paper type (e.g. color paper) for a front page that is different with the paper type for other pages.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-24
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

### Setting a back cover

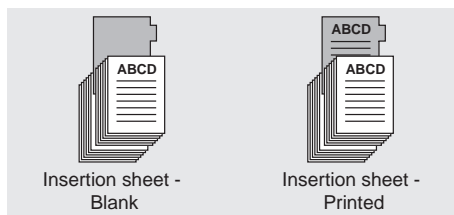
In this printing system, you can set a paper type (e.g. color paper) for a back page that is different with the paper type for other pages.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-24
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

## Inserting a tab

In this printing system, you can set a tab as an interleaf.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-25
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-18
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-18

## Setting a cover

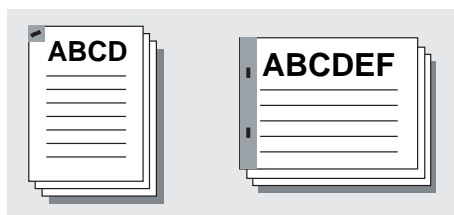
In this printing system, you can output paper that is different with the specified output paper, such as thick paper, as a cover.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-24
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

## 9.2.6 Setting finishing

### Setting stapling

In this printing system, you can staple the output paper.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-20
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

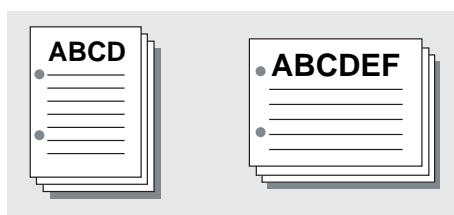
### Setting a punch kit

In this printing system, you can register an optional multi folder in a printer driver.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-3
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-3
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-28
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8

### Setting hole punching

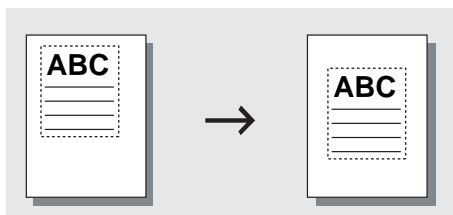
In this printing system, you can hole punch 2, 4, and multi holes on output paper.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-20
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-12

## Adjusting a print position (Image Shift)

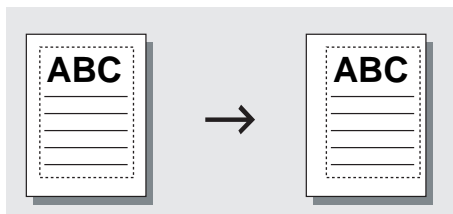
In this printing system, you can adjust the print position of a printing image.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-23
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-23
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

## Adjusting a print position (Binding Margin)

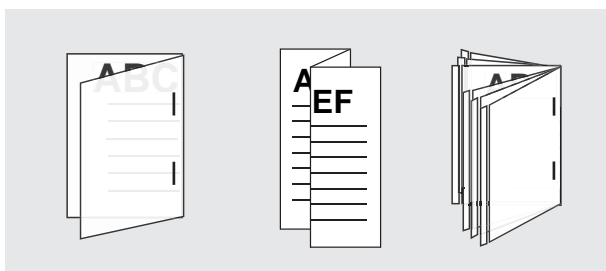
In this printing system, you can adjust the margin to bind documents.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-15

## Setting binding and folding

In this printing system, you can output the paper in half-folded, center stapling and folded, z-folded, tri-folded, or half-bound.

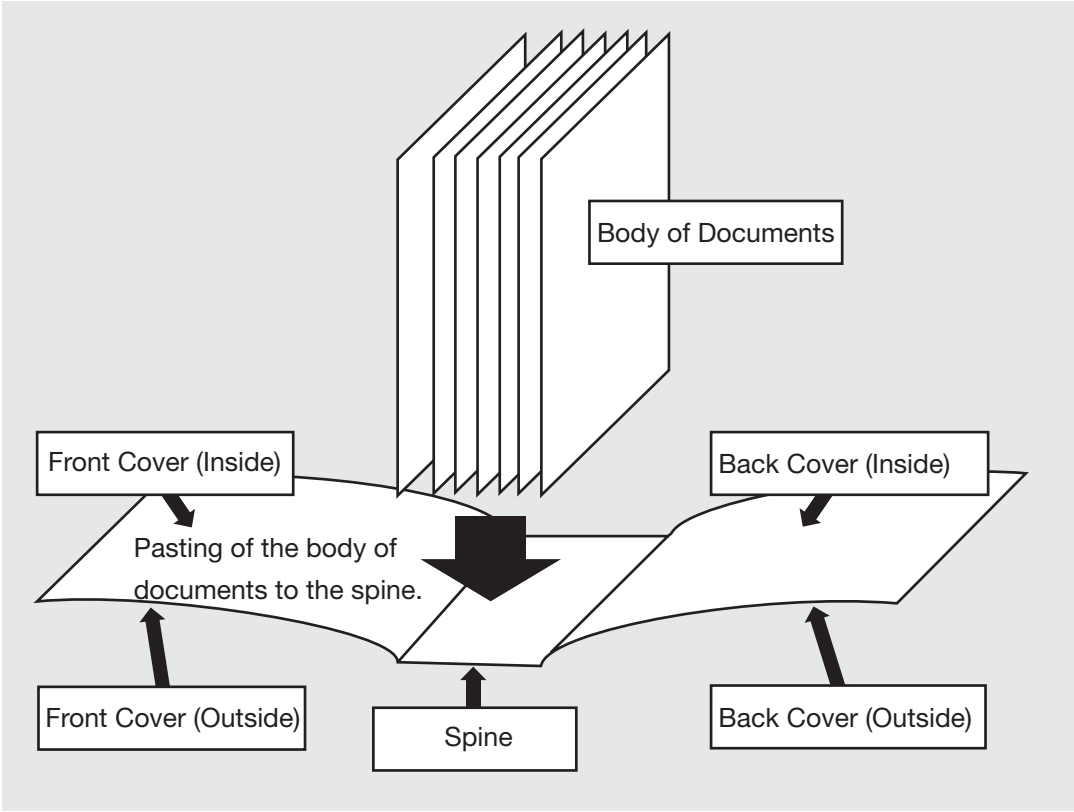


Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-20
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-9
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-8



To set Perfect Binding:

In this printing system, the setting of the roll-up bookbinding is available.

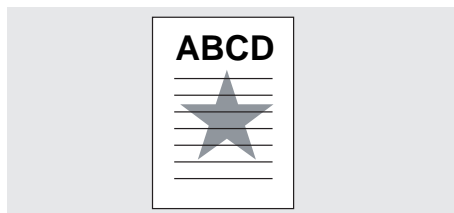


Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	page 10-20
	PS Plug-in Driver	page 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	page 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	page 11-14
	PostScript PPD driver	page 13-12

## 9.2.7 Setting transparent

### Creating a transparent pattern (Overlay)

You can create a transparent pattern to print on output paper.



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-26
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-22
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-22
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

### Printing date/time

In this printing system, you can print date and time on all pages or only the first page.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-26
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-24
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-24
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

### Printing a page number

In this printing system, you can print output paper with a page number.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-26
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-24
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-24

### Printing an original with numbering

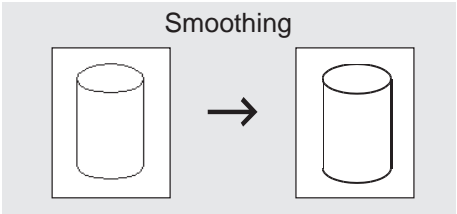
In this printing system, you can print an original with numbering.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-26
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-24
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-24

9.2.8 Setting an image

Printing a line smoothly

You can print the curved section of characters, images, and figure smoothly



Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-30
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-20
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-20
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

Setting a resolution at printing

You can select a resolution either [1200dpi] or [600dpi].

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-30
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-20
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-20
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-11

## 9.2.9 Saving and reprinting a job

### Saving and printing a job (Save, Print/Save)

You can save a print job in an internal hard disk in the printing system and reprint it as necessary.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-25
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 12-8
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-25
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-14

### Setting a password for a print job (Secure Print)

You can set a password for a confidential print job for protection.

Operating system	Printer driver	Reference
Windows	PCL Driver	p. 10-11
	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-25
Mac OS X	PS Plug-in Driver	p. 11-25
	PostScript PPD driver	p. 13-14

---

# 10

**Print functions of PCL driver  
for Windows**

## 10 Print functions of PCL driver for Windows

This chapter describes the functions of the PCL printer driver for Windows.

For detailed information on the basic print methods, refer to page 9-2.

### 10.1 Default settings of the printer driver

After installing the printer driver, you have to configure installable options in the [Configure] screen before printing.

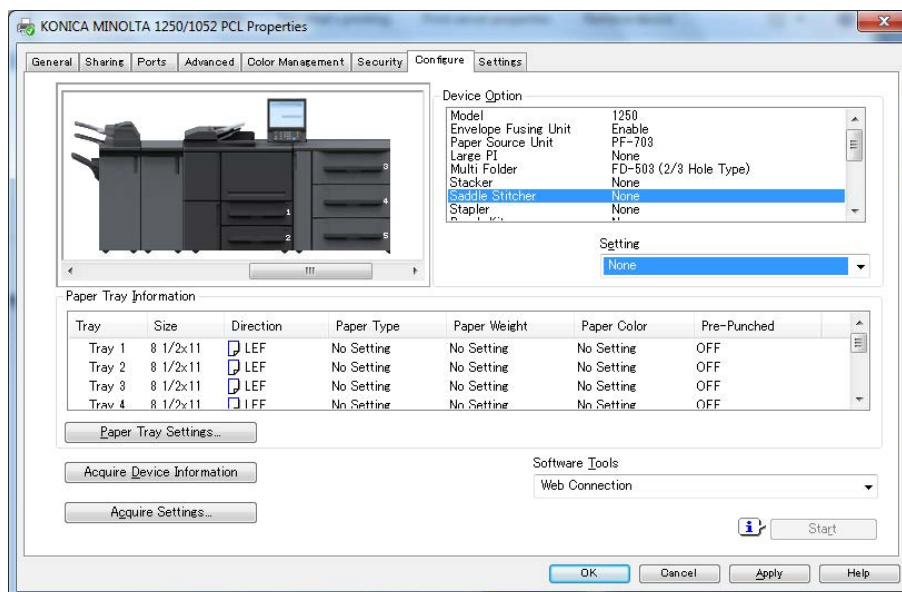
#### **NOTICE**

*Any options that are installed in this machine but not configured in the [Configure] tab cannot be used in the [Printing Preferences] screen of the printer driver. Be sure to set the optional device if there is any.*

#### 10.1.1 Displaying the Properties window

- 1** Open the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], open [Control Panel], and then click [Printers] in [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - In Windows 7, click [Start], then [Devices and Printers].
  - In Windows 7, if [Devices and Printers] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, and select [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, click [Start], then [Printers and Faxes].
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, if [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Other Hardware], then [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2** Open [Printer Properties] or [Properties] window.
  - In Windows XP/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Properties].
  - In Windows 7, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printer Properties].

## 10.1.2 [Configure] tab



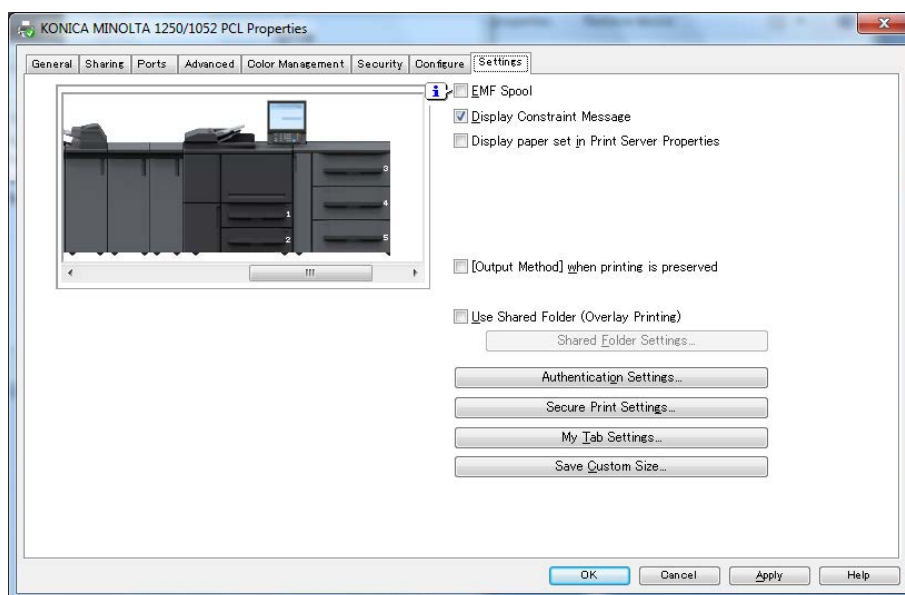
You can configure the device options and the settings of User Authentication and Account Track and enable functions of this machine from the printer driver.

Item Name	Function
[Device Option]	Using this tab, you can configure the installed device options and settings of the User Authentication or Account Track for this machine. Specify the settings for each item in [Setting].
[Paper Tray Information]	Indicates the condition of the paper type specified for each paper tray. Click the [Paper Tray Settings...] to specify the settings for each paper tray.
[Acquire Device Information]	Communicates with this machine to acquire the condition of the installed device options.
[Acquire Settings...]	Specifies the conditions to execute [Acquire Device Information] such as the destination to connect. To acquire device Information automatically, check [Auto]. To specify SNMP community name used on acquirement of device information, enter the community name in [Read Community Name].
[Software Tools]	Starts up software tools such as PageScope Web Connection.

## Reference

- The device options displayed in [Device Option] are updated when the [Auto] is checked in the [Acquire Settings...]. If the [Auto] is not checked, use the [Acquire Device Information] or set manually.
- The [Acquire Device Information] function cannot be used unless you are connected and able to communicate with this machine.

## 10.1.3 [Settings] tab



Using this tab, you can change the default settings on display of message and authentication dialog box.

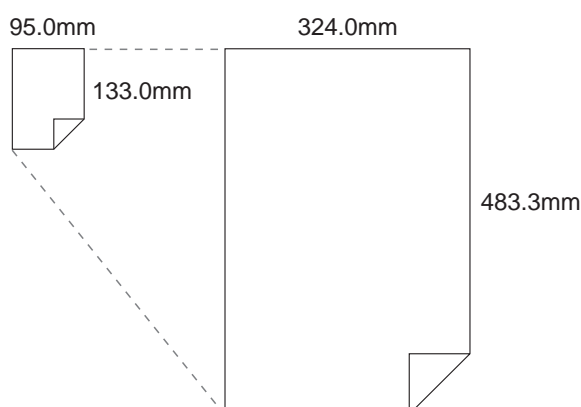
Item Name	Function
[EMF Spool]	Set this to enable meta file (EMF) spool. If you enable this setting when [User Authentication] or [Account Track] is set, you can not print.
[Display Constraint Message]	Set this to enable to display message when you select functions that can not be combined at the same time in the printer driver.
[Display paper set in Print Server Properties]	Uses the paper added in [Server Properties] of the printer folder.
[[Output Method] when printing is preserved]	Set this to reflect the output method configured on printing documents to the [Output Method] on [Basic] tab. The reflected values become the initial value for the next printing.
[Use Shared Folder (Overlay Printing)]	Set this to enable share of the overlay file saved in the shared folder on the network. To set the share folder, click the [Shared Folder Settings] and specify the share folder.
[Authentication Setting]	Configure the [User Authentication] or [Account Track] settings for this machine.  [Verify Authentication settings before printing] When you enable this function, you can confirm whether the user and account information is recognized or not by clicking the [Verify] on the [Authentication Settings] dialog box displayed from [Basic] tab.  [Popup Authentication Dialog when printing] Set this to prompt to input the user name or account name by displaying the [User Authentication/Account Track] dialog box when the user specifies the print command.
[Secure Print Settings]	You can specify the secure print settings.  [Fix Secure Print] Set this to fix the [Output Method] to [Secure Print].  [Popup the User Settings dialog at Secure Print] Set this to prompt to input the ID and password in the [Secure Print] dialog box when specifying a secure print job.



Item Name	Function
[My Tab Settings]	<p>You can specify the settings for the [Display My Tab] of the printer driver.</p> <p>[Display My Tab] : You can set whether [My Tab] is displayed or not. When you check, [My Tab] is displayed. When you remove the check mark, the [Share My Tab], [Prohibit Editing] and [Display Note] are disabled and [My Tab] is not displayed.</p> <p>[Share My Tab] : You can set whether the customized [My Tab] can be shared or not. When you check, the customized [My Tab] that is specified on Server is carried on the [My Tab] for the client when the client install the printer driver and specify the shared printer of server. In addition, you can also set the [Edit My Tab...] invisible to prohibit the client user from editing.</p> <p>[Prohibit Editing] : You can enable/disable the client user's editing. When you check, [Edit My Tab...] is not displayed to prohibit the client users from editing.</p> <p>[Display Note] : You can set whether the description field on the [My Tab] is displayed or not. When you check, the description field on the My Tab is displayed.</p>
[Save Custom Size]	You can register the custom paper sizes.

## Reference

- The custom paper size can be set on [Custom Size] within the following range :
  - Width : from 95.0 to 324.0 mm, Height : from 133.0 to 483.3 mm

**Reference**

For details on the function of the My Tab, refer to page 10-9.

### 10.1.4 About tabs provided by OS

Windows provides [General], [Sharing], [Port], [Advanced], [Color Management] and [Security] tabs.

Using these tabs, you can print a test page and specify the shared printer and the printer port.

For details, please refer to the Windows User's Guide.

### 10.1.5 Registering the default settings

The settings for the machine functions configured when printing can only be applied while using the application. When you exit the application, the settings return to their default settings.

To register the settings, change the printer driver basic settings (default settings).

- 1** Open the [Devices and Printers], [Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], open [Control Panel], and then click [Printers] in [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - In Windows 7, click [Start], then [Devices and Printers].
  - In Windows 7, if [Devices and Printers] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, and select [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
- 2** Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printing Preferences...].  
The [Printing Preferences] dialog box of the printer appears.
- 3** Change the settings of the function, and then click [OK] to exit the function.  
The changed settings are applied when the printer is used by all of the application software.



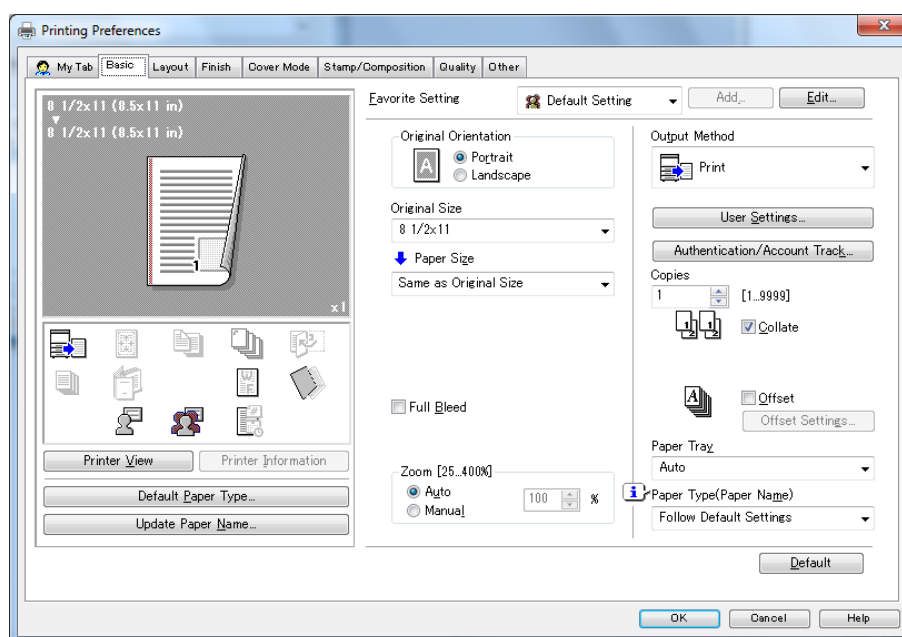
#### Reference

*For details on the function and settings of the printer driver, refer to page 10-9.*

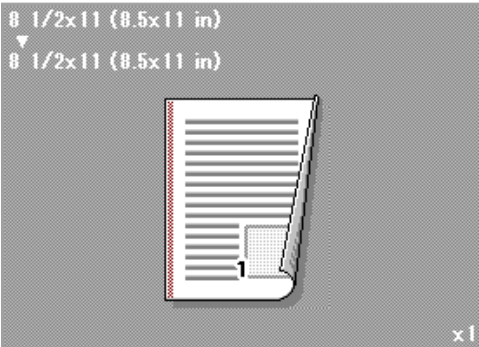

*The printer driver has the [Favorite Setting] function to save configured settings. For details, refer to page 10-7.*

## 10.2 Common Setting

This section describes the settings and buttons common to tabs.



Item Name	Function
[OK]	Click this button to enable changed settings and close the properties window.
[Cancel]	Click this button to disable (cancel) changed settings and close the properties window.
[Help]	Click this button to display Help of each item displayed currently.
[Add] (Favorite Settings)	<p>Current settings with the printer driver can be saved and restored as required.</p> <p>Functions displayed in the list of [Restore Items] can be selected whether you restore the value at the saving or not when you select [Favorite Settings].</p> <p>Functions can be set on [Restore Items] are as follows :</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Original Document Size, Orientation</li> <li>• Copy Count</li> <li>• Paper Type Setting (List Information)</li> <li>• Overlay (File list Information)</li> <li>• Per Pages Setting (List Information)</li> <li>• Watermark (Text List Information)</li> </ul> <p>These items will not be displayed when the [Favorite Settings] is specified until you mark the checkbox for them.</p>
[Edit] (Favorite Settings)	<p>You can edit the saved favorite settings.</p> <p>Using [Option...], you can change the settings of checkbox on [Restore Items].</p>
[Default]	Click this button to restore the default settings.

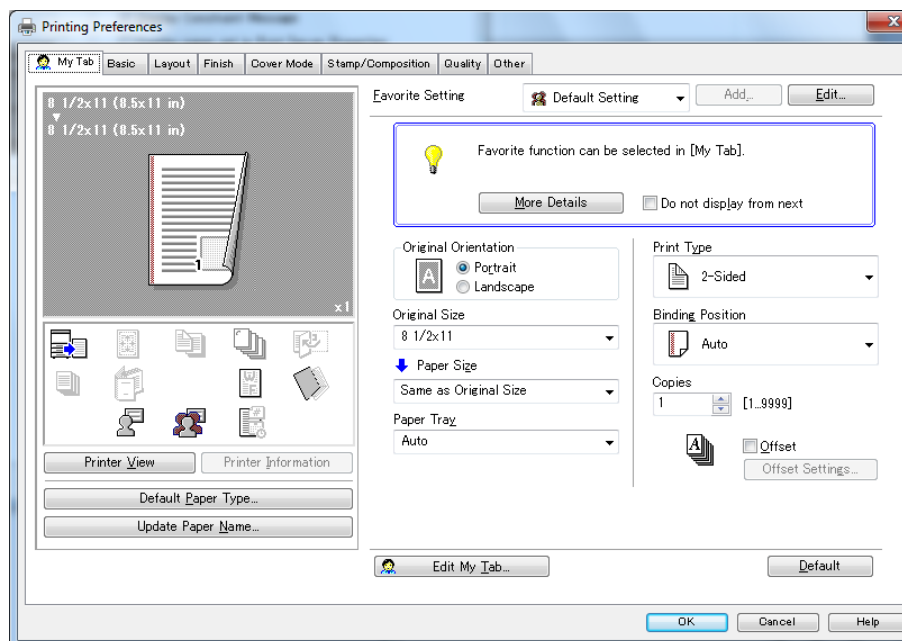
Item Name	Function
[View]	<p>When you select the [Paper View], the sample of the page layout for the current settings is displayed and then you can see the image of the printout.</p> <p>When you select the [Printer View], the structure of printer including current installed options such as Paper Tray is displayed.</p> <p>Paper View :</p> <div>A screenshot of a software interface for paper selection. It shows two options: "8 1/2x11 (8.5x11 in)" and "8 1/2x11 (8.5x11 in)". A small icon of a document with horizontal lines is shown below the text. A small "x1" icon is in the bottom right corner of the screenshot.</div> <p>Printer View :</p> <div>A screenshot of a software interface showing the structure of the printer. It includes a top section with a control panel and a main body with five paper trays labeled 1, 2, 3, 4, and 5 from top to bottom.</div>
[Printer Information]	<p>Starts up software tools such as PageScope Web Connection to confirm the printer information. It is available when you can communicate with this machine.</p>

## 10.3 Parameter details

The Printing Preferences window is the window to configure the printer driver functions. To open this window, in the Print dialog box, click [Properties] (or [Preferences]), or right-click the printer icon in the [Printers] or [Devices and Printers] window and then select [Printing Preferences].

### 10.3.1 My Tab

The items of the My Tab to be displayed can be customized. When you register frequently used functions on the My Tab screen, you can get the better usability of printer driver because you will be able to change settings on one screen.



Function Name	Option	Description
[More Details]	-	Displays the Help of the My Tab.
[Do not display from next]	Off, On	When you check, this description field including [More Details] will not be displayed from next.
[Edit My Tab...]	-	You can register the function to be displayed on the My Tab and remove those from the My Tab. For details, refer to page 10-10.

#### Reference

- When the [Display Note] is disabled on the [My Tab Settings] of the [Settings] tab, the [More Details] and the [Do not display from] are not displayed.
- When the [Prohibit Editing] is enabled on the [My Tab Settings] of the [Settings] tab, the [Edit My Tab...] is not displayed.
- Other items to be displayed are different depending on the registration which is customized on [Edit My Tab...].



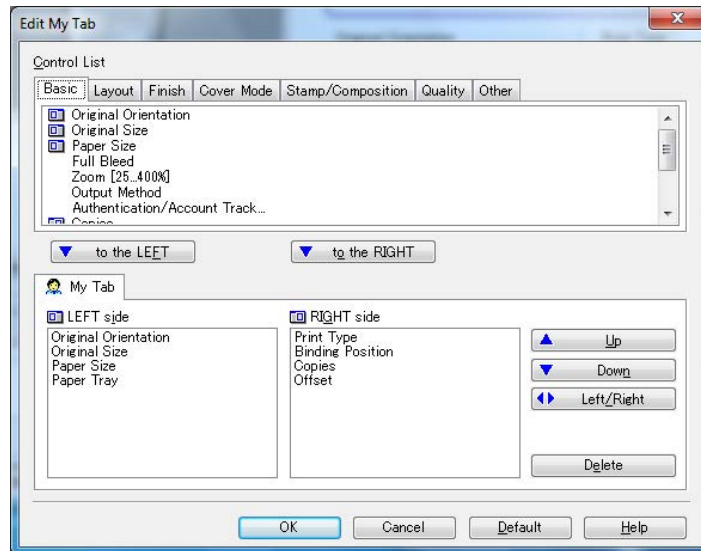
#### Reference

For details on the [Settings], refer to page 10-4.

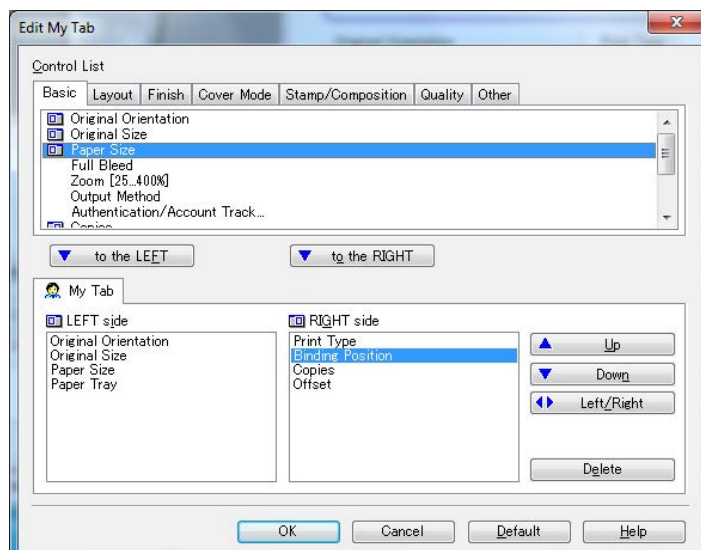
## Edit [My Tab]

- ✓ When the [Prohibit Editing] is enabled on the [My Tab Settings] of the [Settings] tab, the [Edit My Tab...] is not displayed.

- 1 Click the [Edit My Tab...] on the [My Tab].
- 2 Select the function you want to add to the [My Tab] and click the [to the LEFT] or [to the RIGHT].
  - You can select the function from every tab of the [Control List].
  - When you click the [to the LEFT], you can display the selected function on the left side of the [My Tab]. When you click the [to the RIGHT], you can display it to the right side of the [My Tab].
  - The [LEFT side] icon and the [RIGHT side] icon appears in the Control List before the name of function which has been registered already in the [My Tab].



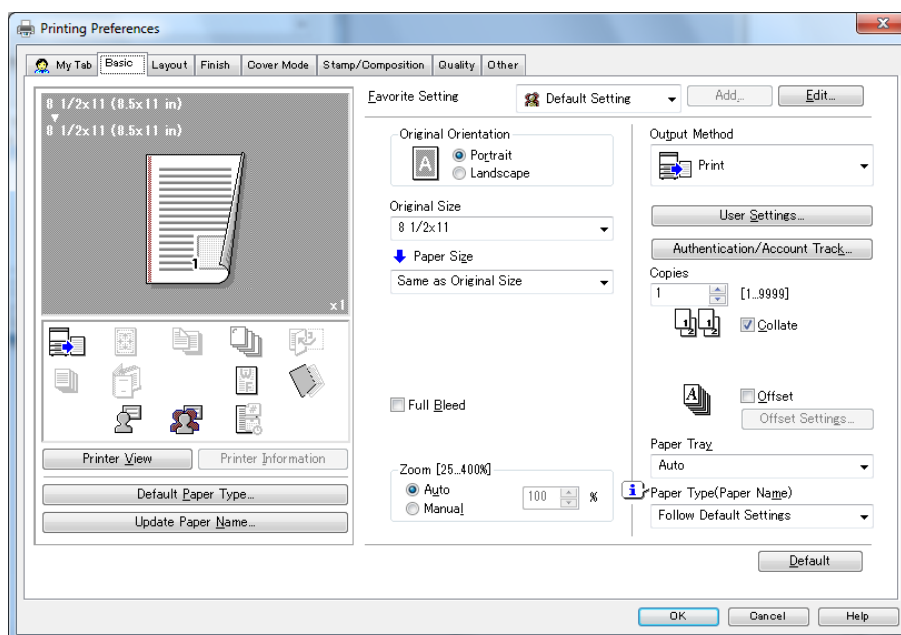
- 3 You can change the position of the registered function.
  - To change the position, select the function to be moved and click the [Up], [Down] or [Left/Right].
  - To delete from the [My Tab], select the function to be deleted and click the [Delete].



- 4 Click [OK].

### 10.3.2 [Basic] tab

You can specify the basic print function such as the paper size, paper type and output method.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Default Paper Type]	[Paper Type]	No Setting
		Plain Paper
		Coated
		PrePrinted
		Fine
		Book/News
		Embossed
		Blank Insert
		Envelope
		Embossed2
		This is set when printing coated paper such as pamphlet.
		Select this to overprint on the printed papers.
		Select this to use non-coated paper used mainly on offset printing.
		Select this to use paper such as book or newspaper.
		Select this to use rough-textured paper.
		Select this to insert paper such as Tab paper.
		Select this option to use the Envelope. To use the Envelope, it is necessary that the Envelope Fusing Unit (EF-102) option is installed.
		Select this option to use the paper that has rough and uneven surface.

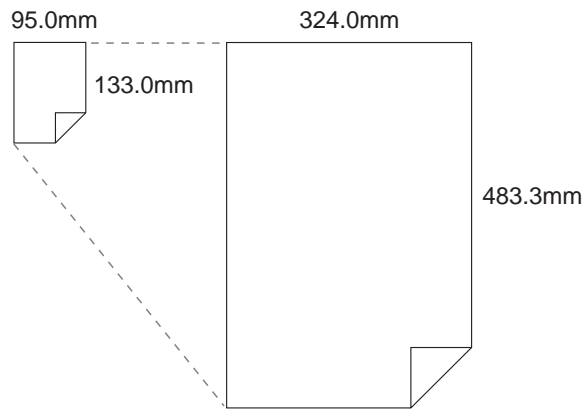
Function Name	Option		Description
[Default Paper Type]	[Weight]	No Setting, 40-49g/m <sup>2</sup> 50-61g/m <sup>2</sup> 62-74g/m <sup>2</sup> 75-91g/m <sup>2</sup> 92-135g/m <sup>2</sup> 136-162g/m <sup>2</sup> 163-216g/m <sup>2</sup> 217-244g/m <sup>2</sup> 245-300g/m <sup>2</sup> 301-350g/m <sup>2</sup>  (In case of the "Unit for Paper Weight" is g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Set weight of output paper. You can not use 301-350g/m <sup>2</sup> when the Paper Source Unit is not specified in the [Configure] tab.
	[Color]	[No Setting], [White], [Clear], [Yellow], [Pink], [Blue], [Green]	Specify color of output paper.
	[Pre-Punched]	Off, On	Select this check box to print on pre-punched paper.
	[Weight Unit]	[g/m <sup>2</sup> ], [Duodecimo], [A-Book], [B-Book], [Octavo], [Bond], [Book], [Bristol], [Cover], [Index], [Tag]	Set a unit of weight.
[Restore Device Status]	When you click the [Restore Device Status], replace the information displayed in [Paper Settings for Each Tray] with the contents displayed in [Device Status].		
[Update Paper Type]	When you click the [Acquire Device Information] in the [Update Paper Name], communicates with the machine and updates the paper name information registered in the device.		
[Original Orientation]	[Portrait], [Landscape]	Select the orientation for the original.	
[Original Size]	The paper sizes registered as the standard paper sizes and custom sizes		Select the paper size of the original.
	[Custom Size]		Set a custom paper size.
[Paper Size]	The available paper sizes registered as the standard paper sizes and custom sizes	Set a paper size to print. When the original size is different size and the [Auto] is specified as Zoom, enlarges or reduces according to the paper size.	
	[Custom Size]		You can register the custom paper sizes.
[Full bleed]	Off, On	Prints in the original image without blank borders.	
[Zoom]	25% - 400%	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.	



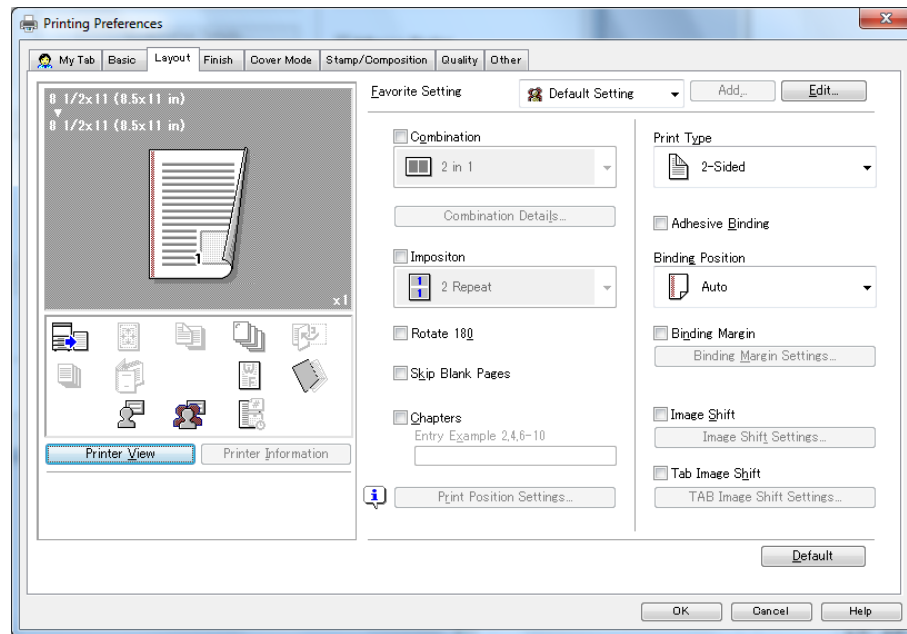
Function Name	Option	Description
[Output Method]	[Print]	When the [Print] is selected, the print job is printed without it being stored in a hard disk.
	[Secure Print]	When the [Secure Print] is selected, you can not output until you input the Secure Print ID and password on the control panel on this machine. Select this to print a confidential documents for protection. For details on the Secure Print refer to page 14-2.
	[Save in User Box]	You can store the printing documents in the internal hard disk of this machine. For details on the HDD Store, refer to page 14-6.
	[Save in User Box/Print]	You can store the printing documents in the internal hard disk of this machine and also print simultaneously. For details on the HDD Store, refer to page 14-6.
	[Wait Mode]	When the [Wait Mode] is selected, you can pause the printing job to checks current setting from the control panel on this machine.
	[Proof Print]	When the [Proof Print] is selected, you can print one copy to check the output. Use this when you print a large volume document, such as multiple sets of pages to prevent misprints.
	[Proof and Print (1st sheet)]	When the [Proof and Print (1st sheet)] is selected, you can print the first page to check the output. Use this when you print a large volume document, such as large number pages to prevent misprints.
	[Hold Print]	When the [Hold Print] is selected, you can store the print job temporarily as a hold job. Use this when you want to print at once at night.
[User Settings]	-	Specify the Secure Print ID and password for [Secure Print] and the file name and user box number for [Save in User Box].
[User Authentication/Account Track]	-	Specify the user name and password when the [User Authentication] is enabled in this machine and the account name and password when the [Account Track] is enabled in the machine. For details, refer to page 14-15 or page 14-17.
[Copies]	1 - 9999	You can specify the number of copies.
[Collate]	Off, On	Select this check box to collate pages sequentially when printing multiple sets of copies.
[Offset]	Off, On	You can stagger the output slightly by one copy when you output multiple copies.
[Offset Settings]	[Offset by number of copies]	Stagger after each set of copies specified.
	[Offset by number of sheets]	Stagger after the number of pages specified.
[Paper Tray]	Auto, Tray 1-8	Select a paper tray to be used. Selectable items vary depending on the option installation status.
[Paper Type (Paper Name)]	-	You can specify the paper name that is registered in this machine.

## Reference

- The custom paper size can be set on [Custom Size] within the following range:
  - Width: from 95.0 to 324.0 mm, Height: from 133.0 to 483.3 mm



## 10.3.3 [Layout] tab



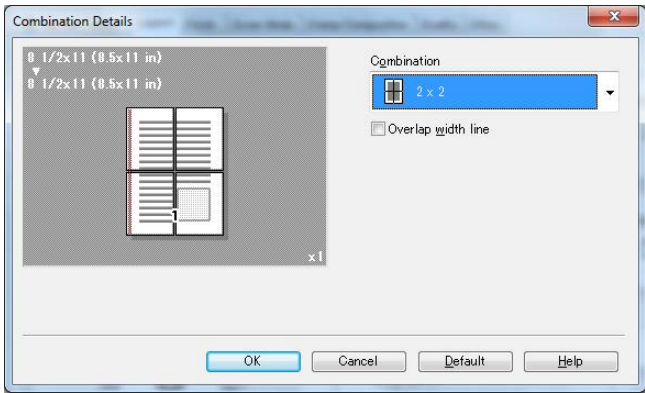
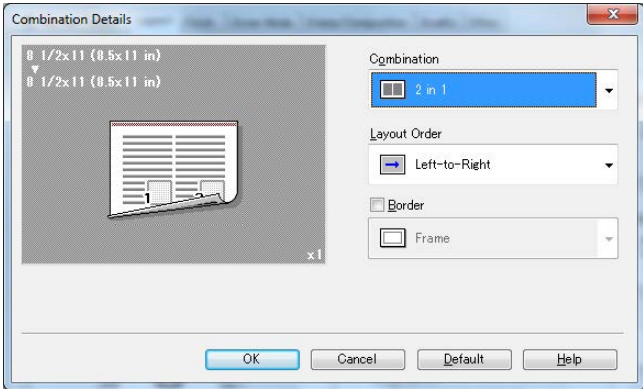
Function Name	Option	Description
[Combination]	[2-in-1], [4-in-1], [6-in-1], [9-in-1], [16-in-1] [2 x 2], [3 x 3], [4 x 4]	Prints multiple pages onto a single sheet by reducing the size of the document. Or prints one page onto multiple sheets by enlarging the size of the document.
[Combination Details]	-	Select the condition of combination. For details, refer to page 10-17.
[Imposition]	[2 Repeat], [2 Repeat Reversal (U)], [2 Repeat Reversal (D)], [2 Repeat Reversal (L)], [2 Repeat Reversal (R)], [2 in 1]	Set this to perform an imposition printing. Outputs onto paper in twice the size specified in the [Original Size]. For example : When the [Paper Size] is A4, the document is printed with A3 sheet.
[Rotate 180]	Off, On	Select this check box to rotate the document 180 to print.
[Skip Blank Pages]	Off, On	Set this not to print blank pages.
[Chapters]	Off, On	Set this to print page on the front side of paper. It can be specified when Print Type is [2-Sided].
[Print Position Settings]	[Top], [Center], [Bottom]	Specify the print position. It can be specified when the page size is the wide size such as [A4W] and the custom paper size.
[Print Type]	[1-Sided], [2-Sided], [Booklet], [Booklet (Original Size x 2)]	Select a print type.
[Adhesive binding]	Off, On	Set this to use the [Adhesive binding] function. You can print the original with the page order that is arranged so that folding each sheet in half and collecting them creates a booklet. It can be specified when the [2-Sided] is specified in the [Print Type].
[Binding Position]	[Auto], [Left Bind], [Right Bind], [Top Bind]	Specify the binding position.
[Binding Margin]	Off, On	Set this to use the binding margin. You can specify the width of the binding margin in the [Binding Margin Settings...].
[Binding Margin Settings...]	-	You can specify detail settings of the binding margin. For details, refer to page 10-18.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Image Shift]	Off, On	Set this to print shifting the position of the entire image within the paper. You can specify the shift width in the [Image Shift Settings...].
[Image Shift Settings...]	-	You can specify detail settings of the image shift. For details, refer to page 10-19.
[Tab Image Shift]	Off, On	Set this to print shifting the position of the entire image within the tab paper. Use this function in combination with per page settings. It can be specified when the original size is A4, or Letter. You can specify the detail of the shift width in the [Tab Image Shift settings...]
[Tab Image Shift settings...]	[Shift Settings]	Specify the shift width to print shifting the position of the entire image within the tab paper.

## Reference

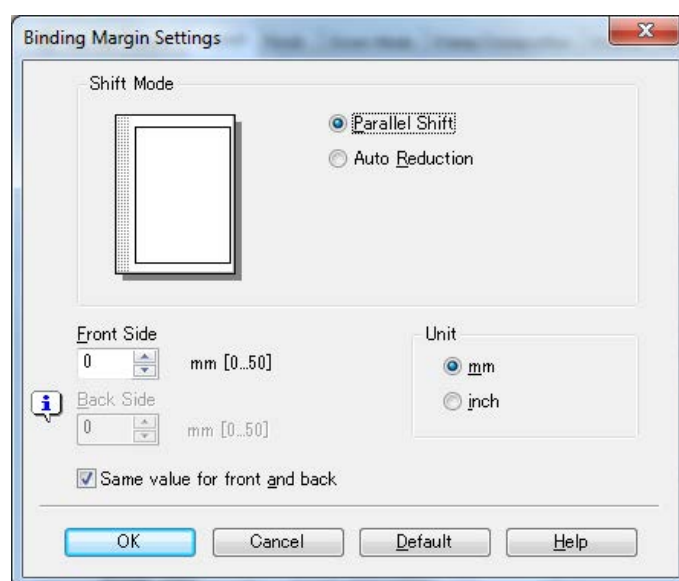
- The position of the binding moves in accordance with the [Binding Position].

Combination Detail



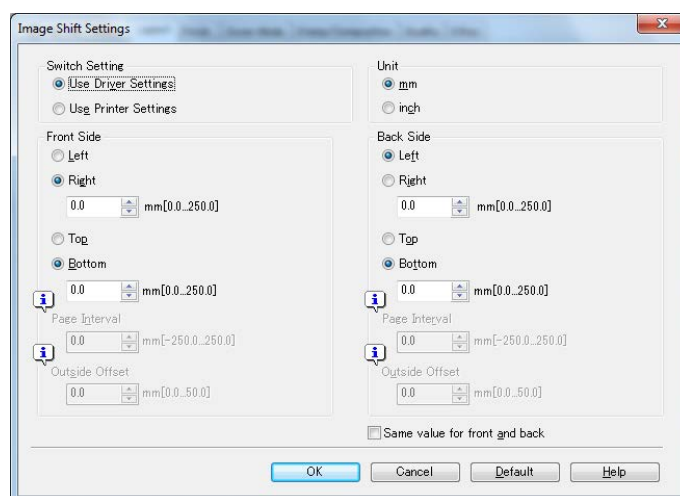
Function Name	Option	Description
Combination	[2 in 1], [4 in 1], [6 in 1], [9 in 1], [16 in 1], [2 x 2], [3 x 3], [4 x 4]	Prints multiple pages onto a single sheet by reducing the size of the document. Or prints one page onto multiple sheets by enlarging the size of the document.
Layout Order	[Left-to-Right], [Right-to-Left] [Sideways from Upper -Left], [Downward from Upper -Left], [Sideways from Upper -Right], [Downward from Upper -Right]	Specify the order of the page arrangement. It can be set when the N in 1 is specified in the Combination.
Border	[Frame], [Line]	Specify whether you use the border or not. If you use, specify the border type. It can be set when the N in 1 is specified in the Combination.
Overlap width line	Off, On	Set this to print a reference line for taping together printed pages. It can be set when the N in N is specified in the Combination.

## Binding Margin Settings



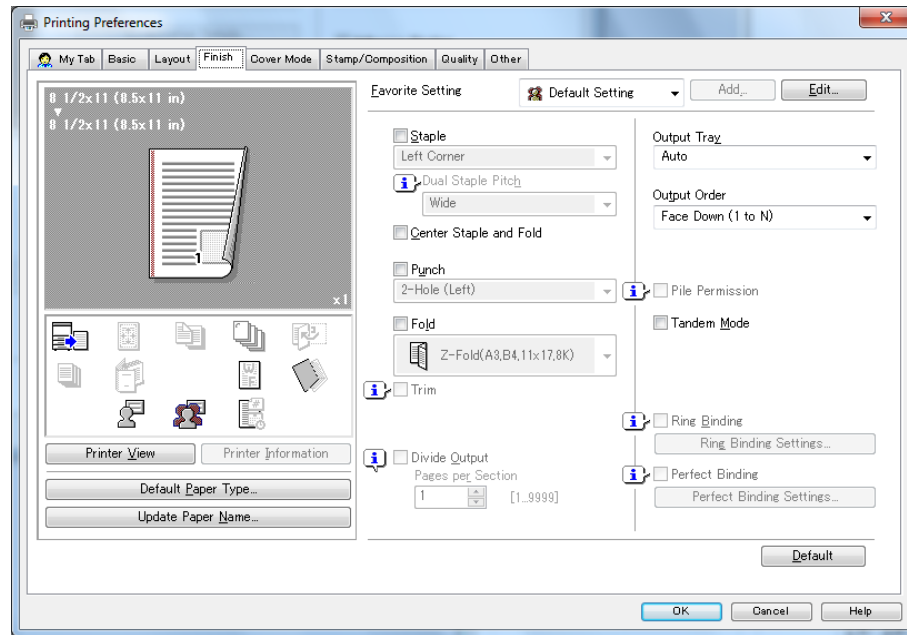
Function Name	Option	Description
Shift Mode	[Parallel Shift], [Auto Reduction]	Specify how the image is shifted to create space for binding margin. [Parallel Shift] : Moves the image horizontally within the paper without reduction. If the document does not have sufficient margins, some portion of the image may be beyond the range of the sheet. [Auto Reduction] : The image is printed being reduced so that it does not be beyond the range of the sheet.
Front Side/Back Side	0 to 50 mm	Specify the width of the binding margin. When you remove the check from the [Same value for front and back] on 2-Sided printing, you can specify the width to the front and the back respectively.
Unit	[mm], [inch]	Select the measurement units for the size settings.

## Image Shift Settings



Function Name	Option	Description
Switch Setting	[Use Driver Settings] [Use Printer Settings]	[Use Driver Settings] : Set this to use the shift width set by this printer driver. [Use Printer Settings] : Uses the values specified on the control panel on this machine.
Unit	[mm], [inch]	Select the measurement units for the size settings.
Front Side/Back Side	-	Specify the shift direction and the shift width. When you remove the check from the [Same value for front and back] on 2-Sided printing, you can specify the width to the front and the back respectively.
Left/Right	0 - 250 mm	Shifts the position of the printing image with the specified amount to the left/right.
Top/Bottom	0 - 250 mm	Shifts the position of the printing image with the specified amount to the top/bottom.
Page Interval	-250 mm to 250 mm	You can specify the spacing to use between pages when the Booklet or Imposition (other than 2 in 1) is specified. When you specify the negative value (-), pages will be overlapped with the specified width.
Outside Offset	0 to 50 mm	When the [Booklet] is specified, you can adjust the page interval so that the narrower margin is created for the more outer page, considering the thickness on folding paper.

## 10.3.4 [Finishing] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Staple]	[Left Corner] [Right Corner] [2 Position (Left)] [2 Position (Right)] [2 Position (Top)]	Select this check box to specify stapling. From the drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position. When the [Top Bind] is specified in the [Binding Position], you can specify the [2 Position (Top)].
[Dual Staple Pitch]	[Wide], [Narrow], [Narrow+]	Specifies the pitch between two staples.
[Center Staple and Fold]	Off, On	Set this to use the center staple and fold function.
[Punch]	[2-Hole (Left)], [2-Hole (Right)], [2-Hole (Top)] [3-Hole (Left)], [3-Hole (Right)], [3-Hole (Top)] [4-Hole (Right)], [4-Hole (Right)], [4-Hole (Top)] [Multi Punch (Left)], [Multi Punch (Right)], [Multi Punch (Top)]	Select this check box to specify hole punching. From the drop-down list, specify the number of punches and the punching position. When the [Top Bind] is specified in [Binding Position], you can specify the [2-Hole (Top)], [3-Hole (Top)], [4-Hole (Top)], and [Multi Punch (Top)].
[Fold]	[Z-Fold (A3, B4, 11x17, 8K)] [Z-Fold (8 1/2x14)] [Half Fold In] [Half Fold Out] [Letter Fold In] [Letter Fold Out] [Zigzag Fold In] [Zigzag Fold Out] [Double Parallel Fold In] [Double Parallel Fold Out] [Gate Fold In] [Gate Fold Out] [Multi-Letter Fold In] [Multi-Letter Fold Out], [Multi-Half Fold]	Set the fold function. From the drop-down list, specify the folding condition.
[Trim]	Off, On	Trim the edge of the half folded papers to align the edge when you select [Center Staple and Fold] or [Multi-Half Fold].

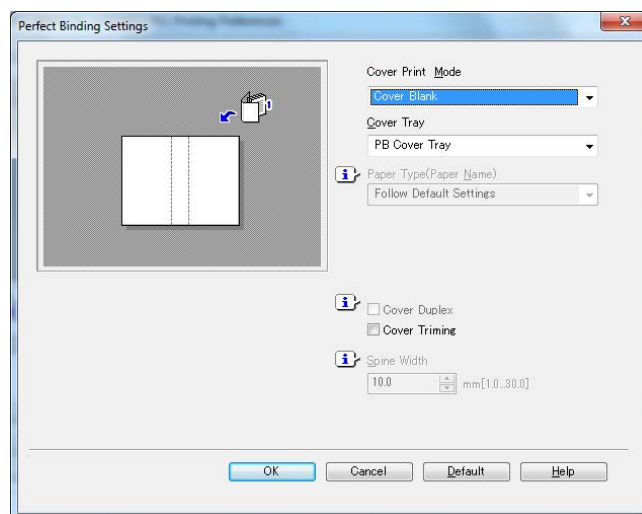


Function Name	Option	Description
[Divide Output]	Off, On	Set this to divide a job and to output with stapling per divided job.
	[Pages per Section]	Select a unit when dividing a job.
[Output Tray]	[Auto] [Stacker Auto] [Stacker 1 Main Tray] [Stacker 1 Sub Tray] [Stacker 2 Main Tray] [Stacker 2 Sub Tray] [Stacker 3 Main Tray] [Stacker 3 Sub Tray] [Multi Folder Main Tray] [Multi Folder Sub Tray] [Saddle-Stitcher Sub Tray] [Stapler Main Tray] [Stapler Sub Tray] [Perfect Binder Sub Tray]	Specify the tray to output the printed pages.
[Output Order]	[Face Down (1 to N)] [Face UP (N to 1)] [Face Up (1 to N)]	Select the [Face Up] to output printed paper with its face up. If you want to print an original in a reverse order, select the [N to 1].
[Pile Permission]	Off, On	When another printed document remains in Stacker, gives the permission to stack the output. Setting the Pile Permission to OFF allows no pile on the stacker.
[Tandem Mode]	Off, On	Set this to output from two printers using the tandem connection.
[Ring Binding]	Off, On	Set this to bind the output using ring-shaped binder.
[Ring Binding Settings]	[Printed Side for Top Sheet]	Specify the printed side of the top sheet when the [Ring Binding] is specified. [Outside Print] : Prints document on outside of the top sheet. [Inside Print] : Prints document on inside of the top sheet.
	[Printed Side for Last Sheet]	Specify the printed side of the last sheet when the [Ring Binding] is specified. [Outside Print] : Prints document on outside of the last sheet. [Inside Print] : Prints document on inside of the last sheet.
[Perfect Binding]	Off, On	Set this to use the Perfect Binding.
[Perfect Binding Settings...]	-	Set this to use the Perfect Bind function. For details, refer to page 10-22.

#### Reference

- The [Staple] function is available only when an optional [Staple Finisher] is installed.
- The details of [Dual Staple Pitch] are as follows:  
Wide.....about 165mm  
Narrow.....about 140mm  
Narrow+...about 120mm
- The [Center Staple and Fold] function is available only when an optional [Saddle Stitcher] is installed.
- The [Punch] function is available only when an optional [Punch Unit] or [Multi Hole Punch Unit] is installed.
- The [Fold] function is available only when an optional [Multi Folder], [Saddle Stitcher] or [Saddle Unit] is installed.
- The [Ring Binding] function is available only when an optional [Ring Binder] is installed.

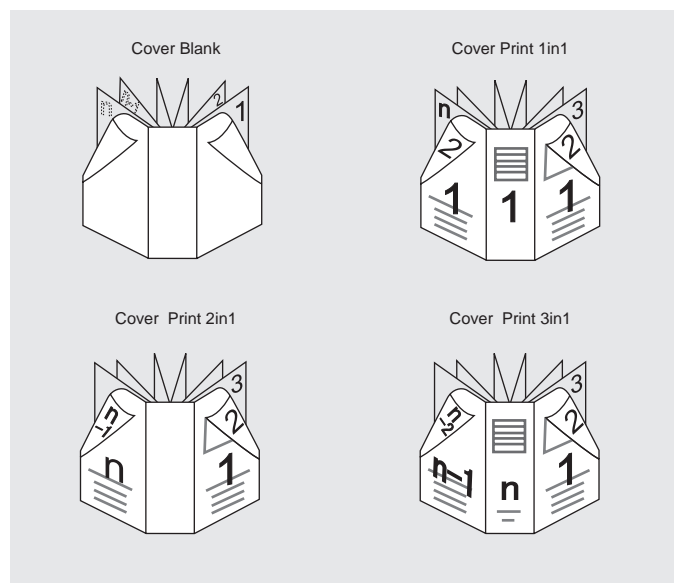
## Perfect Binding Settings



Function Name	Option	Description
[Cover Print Mode]	[Cover Blank] [Cover Print 1in1] [Cover Print 2in1], [Cover Print 3in1]	Set this when using a perfect binder function. For detail, refer to page 10-23.
[Cover Tray]	Tray 1-8 PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3 PB Cover Tray	You can set a cover tray for a perfect binder.
[Paper Tray(Paper Name)]	-	You can specify the paper name that is registered in this machine.
[Cover Duplex]	Off, On	Set this when setting a duplex cover for a perfect binder.
[Cover Trimming]	Off, On	Set this when trimming a cover for a perfect binder.
[Spine Width]	1.0 - 30.0 mm	Set the width of a spine.

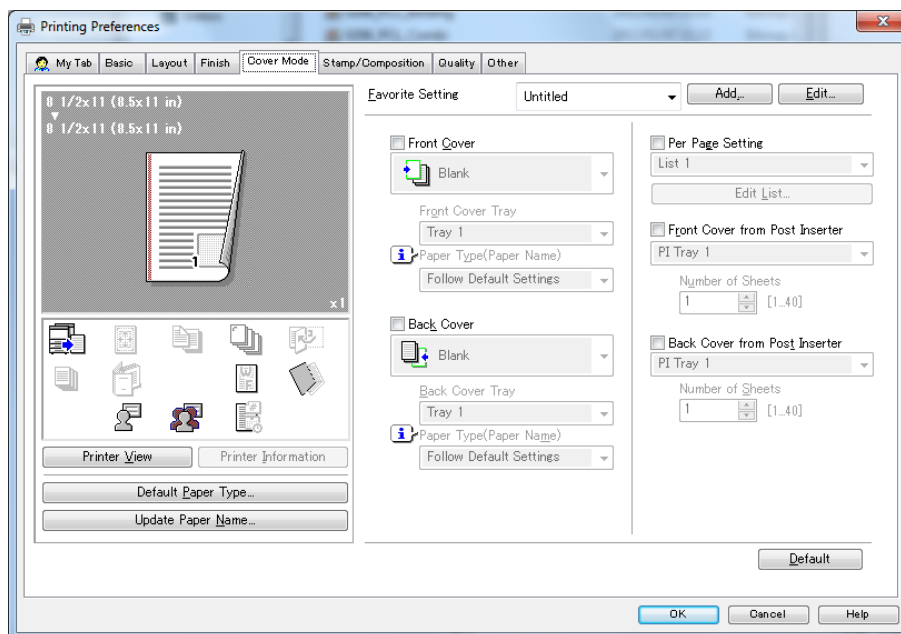
## Perfect Binding Mode

Perfect Binding mode has the following 4 types:



Function Name	Description
[Cover Blank]	Cover wraps the body of document without being printed.
[Cover Print 1in1]	This is used when arrangements are made in advance for the originals the front cover, the back cover and the spine of which have been cut and pasted to the same size as the paper used as the front cover.
[Cover Print 2in1]	For the front cover, the first page and the last page (n page) of the originals are made as 2in1, and the second page up to the last page but one (n - 1 page) are printed as the body of documents with no printing made on the spine for perfect binding.
[Cover Print 3in1]	After cutting and pasting automatically the first page of the original on the front cover, the last page but one (n - 1 page) on the back cover, and the last page (n page) on 3in1 as the spine, the front cover is printed. And the second page up to the last page but two (n - 2 page) are printed as the body of documents.

## 10.3.5 [Cover Mode] tab

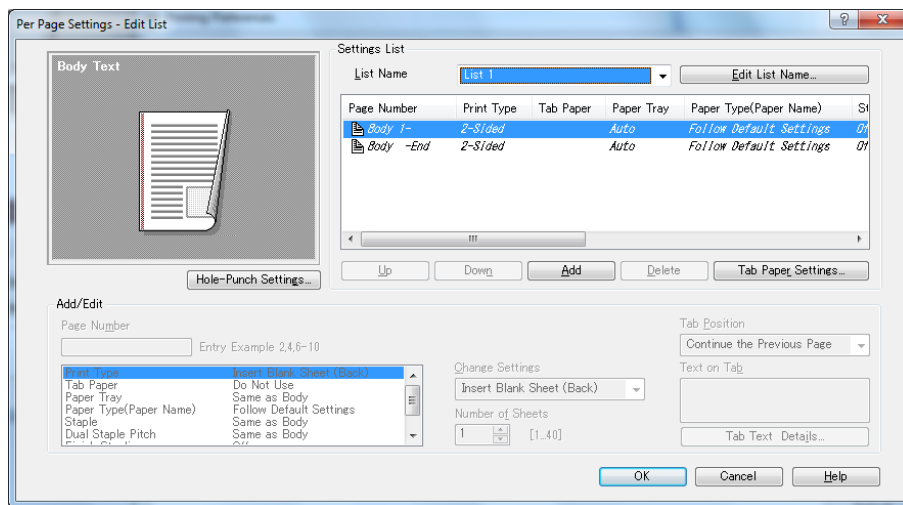


Function Name	Option	Description
[Front Cover]	[Blank], [Print]	Set this to print adding a front cover.
[Front Cover Tray]	Tray 1 - 8	Specify a paper tray for a front cover. Selectable items vary depending on the option installation status.
[Paper Type (Paper Name)]	-	You can specify the paper name that is registered in this machine.
[Back Cover]	[Blank], [Print]	Set this to print adding a back cover.
[Back Cover Tray]	Tray 1 - 8	Specify a paper tray for a back cover. Selectable items vary depending on the option installation status.
[Paper Type (Paper Name)]	-	You can specify the paper name that is registered in this machine.
[Per Page Setting]	Off, On	You can insert the different paper between pages or switch the paper or tray per page. You can make a list to specify the condition per page using the [Edit List].
[Edit List]	[List Name]	Select the list name to edit. The settings are displayed in the list. For details, refer to page 10-25.
[Front Cover from Post Insert]	PI Tray 1 - 2 PI PFU Tray 1-3	Set this to print adding the front cover from the post inserter.
[Number of Sheets]	1 - 40	Specify the number of the front cover sheets from the post inserter to insert.
[Back Cover from Post Insert]	PI Tray 1 - 2 PI PFU Tray 1-3	Set this to print adding the back cover from the post inserter.
[Number of Sheets]	1 - 40	Specify the number of the back cover sheets from the post inserter to insert.

## Reference

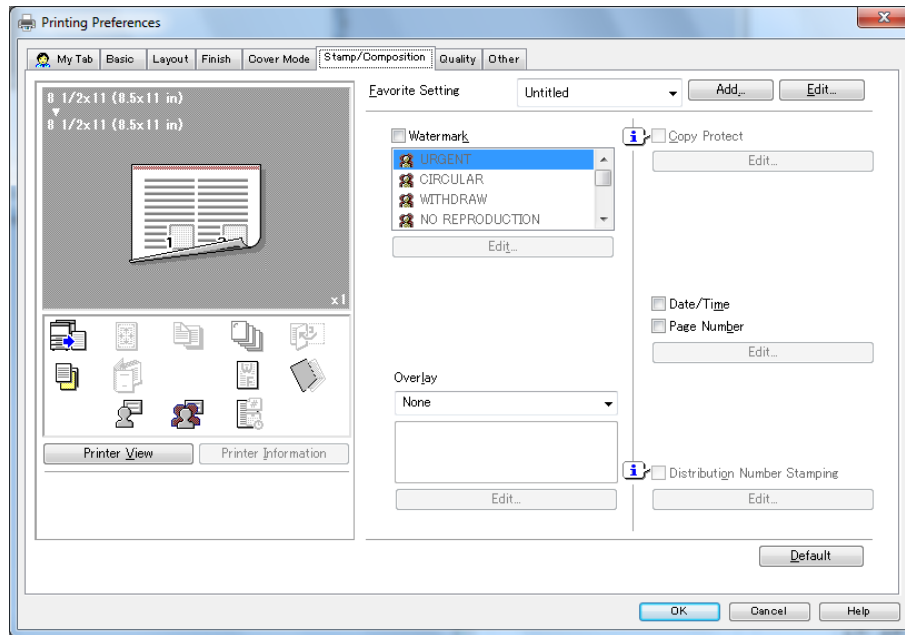
- The [Front Cover from Post Inserter]/[Back Cover from Post Inserter] function is available only when an optional [Cover Sheet Feeder] is installed.

## Per Pages Setting (Edit List)



Function Name	Description
[List Name]	Select the list name to edit. The settings are displayed in the list.
[Edit List Name]	You can change the list name.
[Up]/[Down]	Moves the position of the selected setting line. Change the order in ascending order of the page numbers.
[Add]	Add the setting. You can specify the setting in the [Add/Edit].
[Delete]	Deletes the position of the selected setting line.
[Page Number]	Specify the page numbers using a numerical value. To specify multiple pages, separate each page number with a comma or specify the range using a hyphen.
[Print Type]	Specify the print type from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Tab Paper]	Specify the tab paper to use from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Paper Tray]	Specify the paper tray to use from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Paper Type (Paper Name)]	Specify the paper type (paper name) to use from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Staple]	Specify the number and position of the staple from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Dual Staple Pitch]	Specify the width of the staple pitch from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Finish Stapling]	When the range till the last page specified in the [Page Number], select [ON] from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Hole-Punch]	Specify the punch setting to use from the drop down list of the [Change Settings].
[Change Settings]	Select the settings for each function.
[Number of Sheets]	Specify the number of sheets to insert.
[Tab Position]	Specify the header position of tab paper.
[Text on Tab]	Specify the text on tab to output on tab paper. You can enter up to 3 lines.
[Tab Text Details]	Specify the detailed settings for the header text. [Orientation] : Select the orientation for the header text. [Vertical Position] : Select the vertical position for the header text. [Horizontal Position] : Select the horizontal position for the header text. [Font Settings] : Select the font settings for the header text. [Style] : Select the style for the header text. [Size] : Select the font size for the header text.

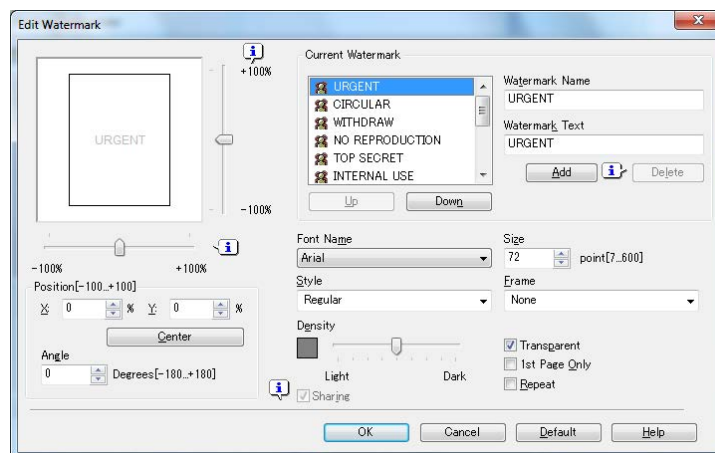
## 10.3.6 [Stamp/Composition] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Watermark]	[URGENT] [CIRCULAR] [WITHDRAW] [NO REPRODUCTION] [TOP SECRET] [INTERNAL USE] [IMPORTANT] [Proof] [Confidential] [DRAFT] [COPY]	Prints a document overlapping a watermark (text stamp). The default watermarks described in the left column are prepared. When you want to create a watermark with another name, use [Edit...] to create new name and add the watermark to the list.
[Edit...]	-	Edit watermarks. You can create, change, and delete watermarks. For details, refer to page 10-27.
[Overlay]	[None]	Set this not to use the overlay function.
	[Create Overlay File]	Create the data for overlay by printing after specifying the document in this setting. The data created is saved in the computer.
	[Create Shared Overlay File]	Create the overlay file in the shared folder that is specified in the [Use Shared Folder (Overlay Printing)] on the [Settings] tab. For details, refer to page 10-4.
	[Print in Overlay]	Prints a document overlapping with the data for the overlay created in the [Create Overlay File]. Set this to enable to select from the list for overlay saved in computer.
[Edit...]	-	Edit the overlay printing. You can edit the condition for the overlay printing. For details, refer to page 10-28.
[Copy Protect]	Off, On	Set this to combines the selected document with the copy protect pattern to protect from unauthorized copying

Function Name	Option	Description
[Edit...]	[Preset Stamp]	Select the preset stamp that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect] from among [Copy], [Invalid], [Illegal copy], or [Invalid copy].
	[Background Pattern]	Select the background pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect] from among [Cherry], [Arabesque], or [Check].
[Date/Time]	Off, On	Set this to print adding date and time.
[Page Number]	Off, On	Set this to print adding page number.
[Edit...]	-	Edit Date/Time/PageNumber. For details, refer to page 10-29.
[Distribution Number Stamping]	Off, On	Set this to print adding distribution number.
[Edit...]	-	Edit Distribution Number Stamping. For details, refer to page 10-29.

## Editing Watermark

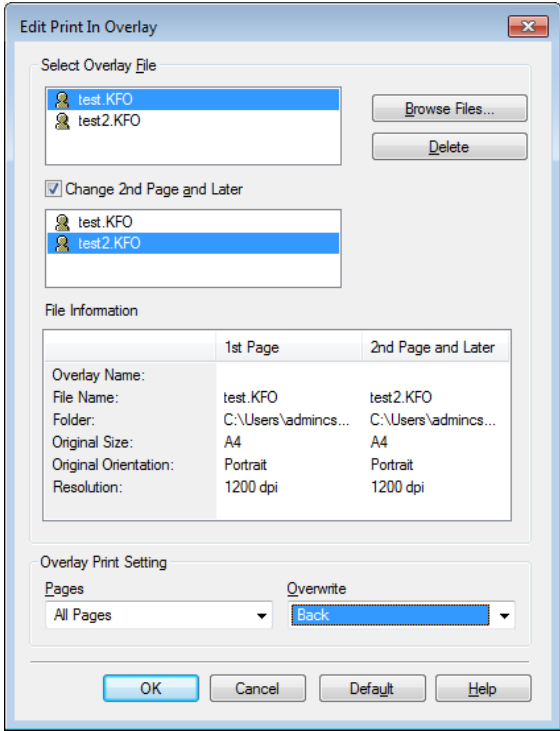


Function Name	Description
Watermark List	The following watermarks are available. [URGENT] [CIRCULAR] [WITHDRAW] [NO REPRODUCTION] [TOP SECRET] [INTERNAL USE] [IMPORTANT] [Proof] [Confidential] [DRAFT] [COPY]
[Watermark Name]	Enter the name of the watermark. You can enter up to 30 characters.
[Watermark Text]	Enter the watermark. You can enter up to 30 characters.
[Add]	Click this button to create a new watermark.
[Delete]	Click this button to delete the selected watermark. You cannot delete the default watermarks.
[Up] / [Down]	Click the button to change the order of items displays in the list. This allows you to move the frequently used items upward.

Function Name	Description
[Position]	Select the vertical and lateral positions. You can specify the positions using the scroll bars provided on the right of and under the image.
[Center]	Click this button to return the watermark back to the center position.
[Angle]	Specify the watermark print angle.
[Font Name]	Select the font.
[Size]	Select the size.
[Style]	Select the style.
[Frame]	Select the frame style.
[Density]	Specify the density of the text color.
[Transparent]	Select this check box to print the watermark in a transparent image.
[1st Page Only]	Select this check box to print the watermark only on the first page.
[Repeat]	Select this check box to print the watermark on one page repeatedly.
[Sharing]	Select this check box to register the watermark for sharing it with other users or clear this check box to register it for private use.

Editing Overlay

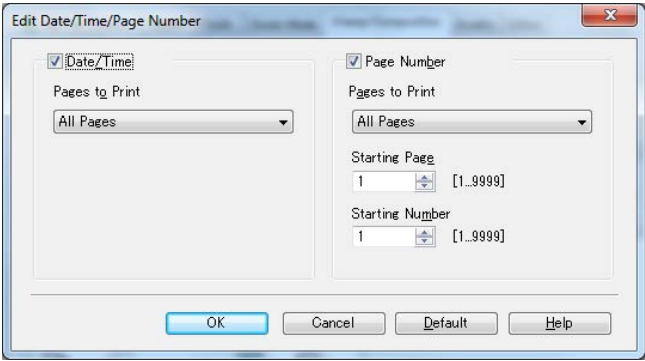
Select [Print Overlay] and click [Edit] to edit overlay printing.



Function Name	Description
[Browse Files...]	Click to load the overlay file.
[Delete]	Deletes the selected overlay from the list.
[Change 2nd Page and Later]	Set this to change the overlay used for 2nd page and later.
[File Information]	Displays the file information for the overlay selected in list.
[Pages]	Select the pages of the document to be printed.
[Overwrite]	Specify the order to overlap between the document and overlay data to print.

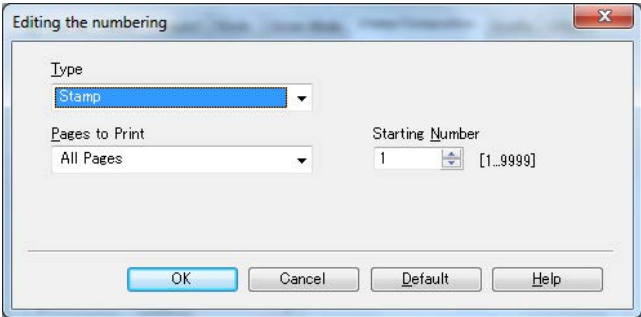


Editing Date/Time/Page Number



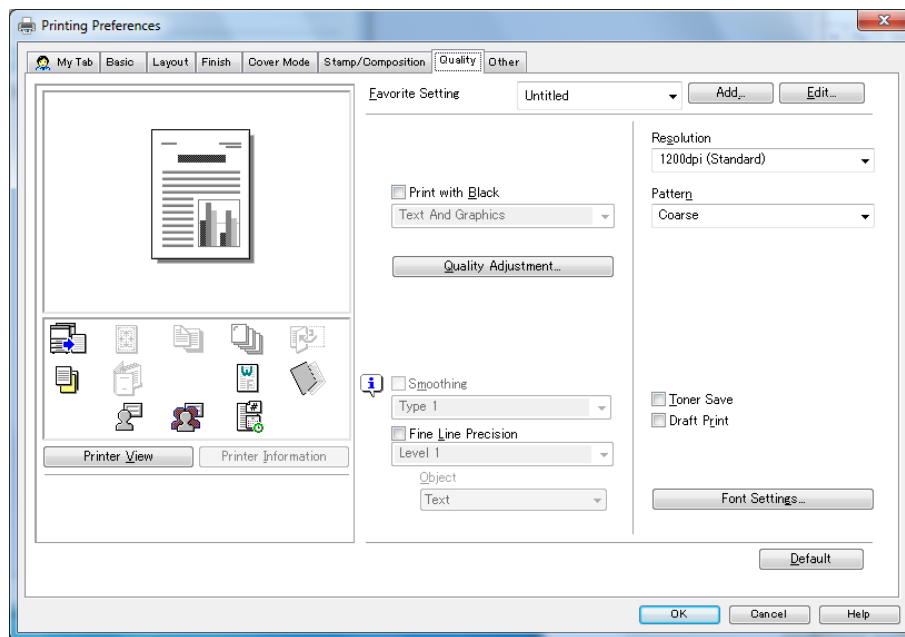
Function Name	Description
[Date/Time] - [Pages to Print]	Select the pages to print date and time from [All Pages] or [1st Page Only].
[Page Number] - [Pages to Print]	Select the pages to print page number from among [All Pages], [Not Front Cover] or[Not Front-Back Cover].
[Page Number] - [Starting Page]	Specify the starting page number to print page number.
[Page Number] - [Starting Number]	Specify the starting number to print page number.

Editing Distribution Number



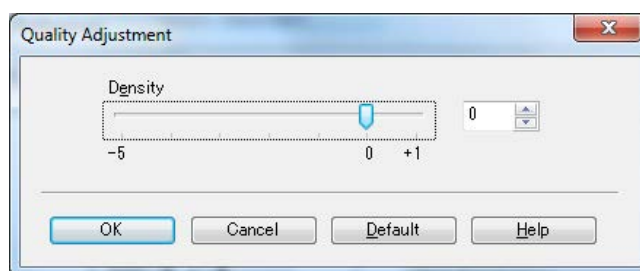
Function Name	Description
[Type]	Specify the numbering type from the [Stamp] or [Watermark].
[Pages to Print]	Select the pages to print distribution number from [All Pages] or [1st Page Only].
[Starting Number]	Specify the starting number to print distribution number.

## 10.3.7 [Quality] tab



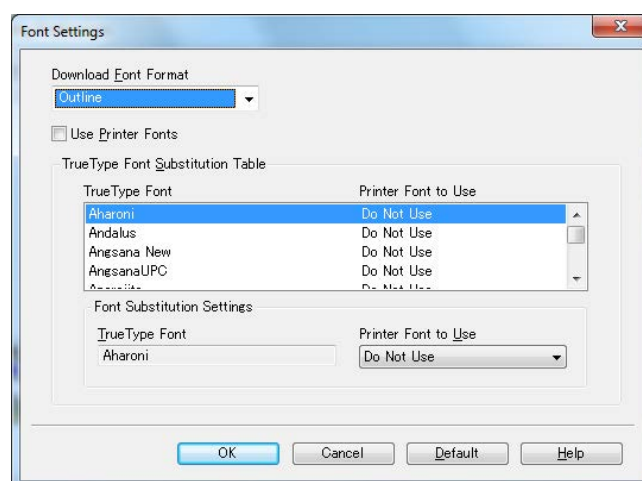
Function Name	Option	Description
[Print with Black]	[All], [Text Only], [Text And Graphics]	Prevents faint printing of colored text, lines and figures according to the selected settings.
[Quality Adjustment...]	-	Set this to adjust the image quality. For details, refer to page 10-31.
[Smoothing]	[Type 1] [Type 2] [Type 3]	Select this check box to set smoothing. [Smoothing] is available only when [600 dpi] and Thinning are selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Type 1] : Performs processing appropriate for diagonal lines in general text and diagram.</li> <li>[Type 2] : Performs processing appropriate for curves in general text.</li> <li>[Type 3] : Performs processing appropriate for curves in dingbat and small letters</li> </ul>
[Fine line Precision]	[Level 1] [Level 2] [Level 3] [Level 4]	When you print small letters, printing result might become illegible depending on the contents of the original documents. In this case, setting [Fine line Precision] enables to read small letters. The higher you set the level, the line becomes thinner.
[Object]	[Text] [All-image]	Specify the target when the [Fine line Precision] is set.
[Resolution]	[1200 dpi (High Quality)], [600 dpi (High Quality)], [1200 dpi (Standard)], [600 dpi (Standard)]	Select a resolution for printing. In only case of using Acrobat 7 or later, the printing quality becomes higher than [Standard] by selecting [High Quality]. However, the speed becomes slow a little.
[Pattern]	[Fine], [Coarse]	Specify fineness of the graphic patterns.
[Toner Save]	Off, On	Controls the print density to reduce toner consumption. It corresponds with [Quality Adjustment] - [-2].
[Draft Print]	Off, On	Prints thinly the portion of the original other than letters. It corresponds with [Quality Adjustment] - [-4].
[Font Settings]	-	Specify the font settings. For details, refer to page 10-31.

## Quality Adjustment



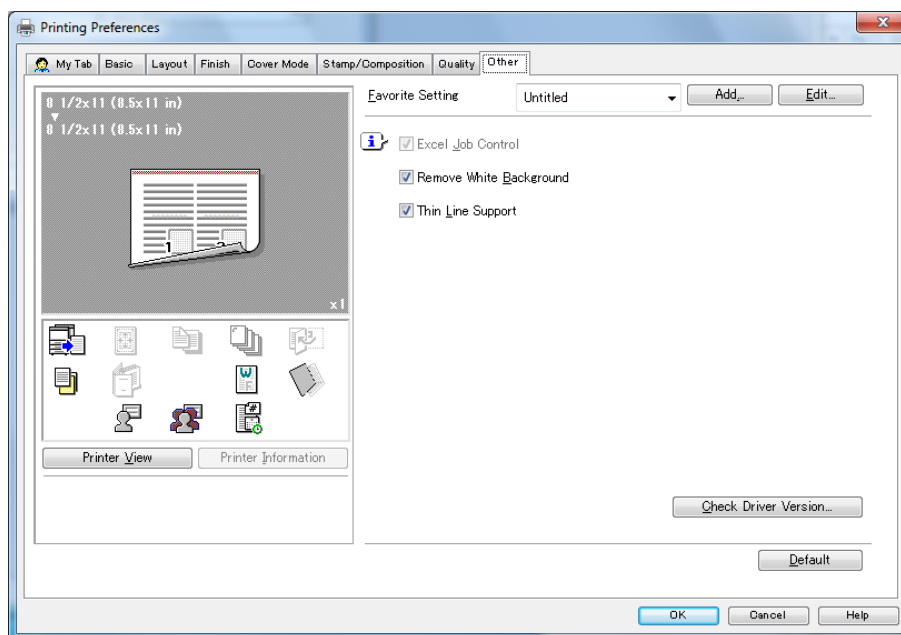
Function Name	Option	Description
[Density]	-5 - +1	Adjust the print density. Move the slider toward plus to deepen the density and move the slider toward minus to lighten the density.

## Font Settings



Function Name	Option	Description
[Download Font Format]	[Outline] [Bitmap]	Select the font type downloaded to the printer.
[Use Printer Fonts]	Off, On	The speed can be increased by using printer fonts. However, the data image and the print result may be different because it prints replacing with printer fonts. When you use True Type fonts, you can get the same print result with the data image because data of True Type fonts you used is transferred directly to the printer.
[True Type Font Substitution Table]	-	Displays the list contains True Type Font and Printer Font to use/not to use.
[Printer Font to Use]	-	Specify whether you replace the selected font in the True Type Font Substitution Table or not.

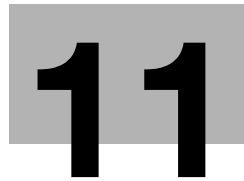
## 10.3.8 [Other] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Excel Job Control]	Off, On	When multiple Microsoft Excel sheets with different page settings are printed at one time, the sheets may be divided into jobs per sheet. Set this to minimize such job dividing.
[Remove White Background]	Off, On	When an overlay file is printed on top of Microsoft PowerPoint data, white areas are removed so that the white background of the PowerPoint data does not hide the overlay file. When you remove the check from this, prints the original data as is without removing the background.
[Thin Line Support]	Off, On	Prints without erasing the thin line when the reduction print is done.
[Check Driver Version...]	-	Displays the printer driver version information.

## Reference

- The [Excel Job Control], [Remove White Background] settings are not available in Windows Vista x64, Windows 7 x64, Windows Server 2008 x64, and Windows Server 2008 R2.
- You can change the [Excel Job Control] setting only when the printer driver setting dialog is displayed from the [Printers] ([Devices and Printers] in Windows 7/Server 2008 R2) window.



**Print functions of PS Plug-in  
driver**

## 11 Print functions of PS Plug-in driver

This chapter describes functions of the PS Plug-in driver using Windows 7 screens.

For basic print method, refer to page 9-2 (Windows) or page 9-3 (Mac OS X).

### 11.1 Default settings of the printer driver

After installing the printer driver, you have to set an optional device in the [Configure] screen before printing.

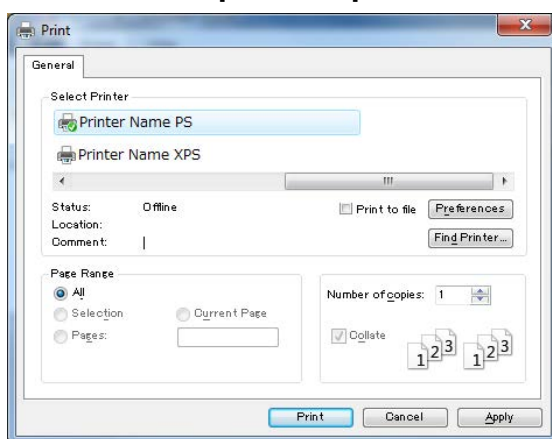
#### **NOTICE**

*You cannot use functions of the optional device until setting it in the [Configure] screen. Be sure to set the optional device if there is any.*

#### 11.1.1 Displaying the Configure screen

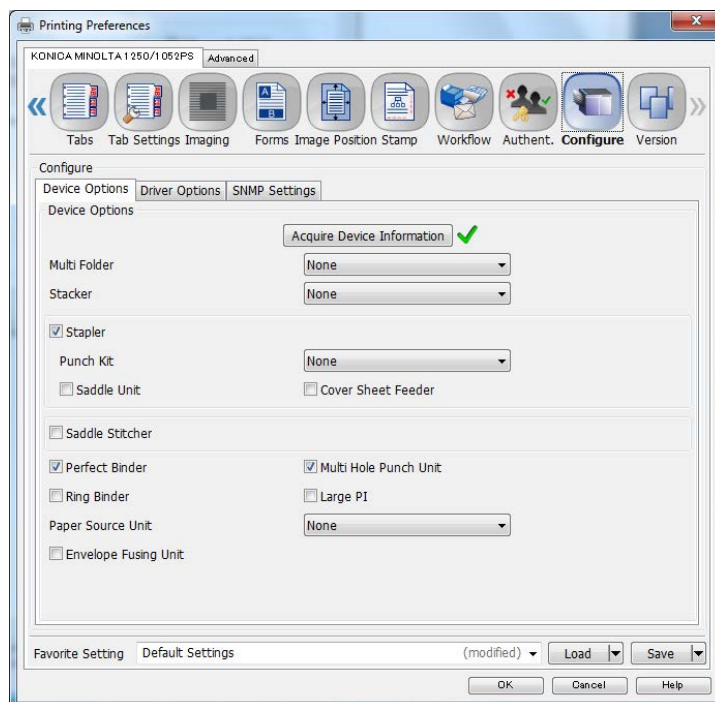
##### For Windows

- 1 Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print] from the menu.
- 2 Select the printer name and click [Preferences].



- 3 Click [Configure] tab

- 4 Set the optional device as required and click [OK].



The setting of the optional device is completed.



### Reference

Refer to [ for more detailed information on ]Configurepage 11-28.

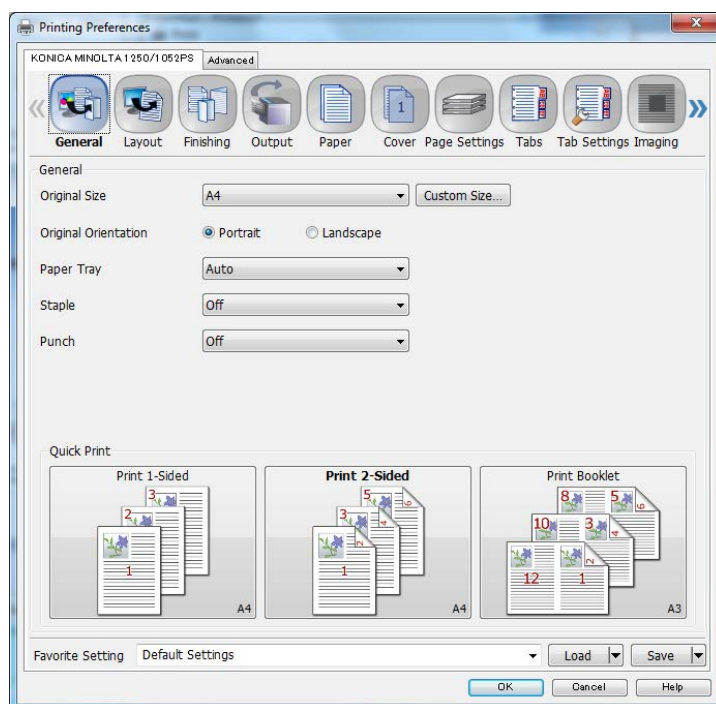
## For Mac OS X

- 1 Open the data in the application, and click [File]. Then click [Print].
- 2 Select the printer name to use.
- 3 Select [bizhub PRESS 1250/1052PS] from the pane pop-up menu and click the [Set].
- 4 Click [Configure] tab.
- 5 Set the optional device as required and click [OK].

The setting of the optional device is completed.

## 11.2 Common Setting

This section describes the settings and buttons common to tabs.



Item Name	Function
[OK]	Click this button to enable changed settings and close the properties window.
[Cancel]	Click this button to disable (cancel) changed settings and close the properties window.
[Help]	Click this button to display Help of the items.
[Load]/[Save](Favorite Setting)	To register the current settings, click [Save] after selecting from [Favorite] pull down. You can also change the registered name. To recall the setting, select the name from the [Favorite Setting] pull-down menu and click [Load].

### Reference

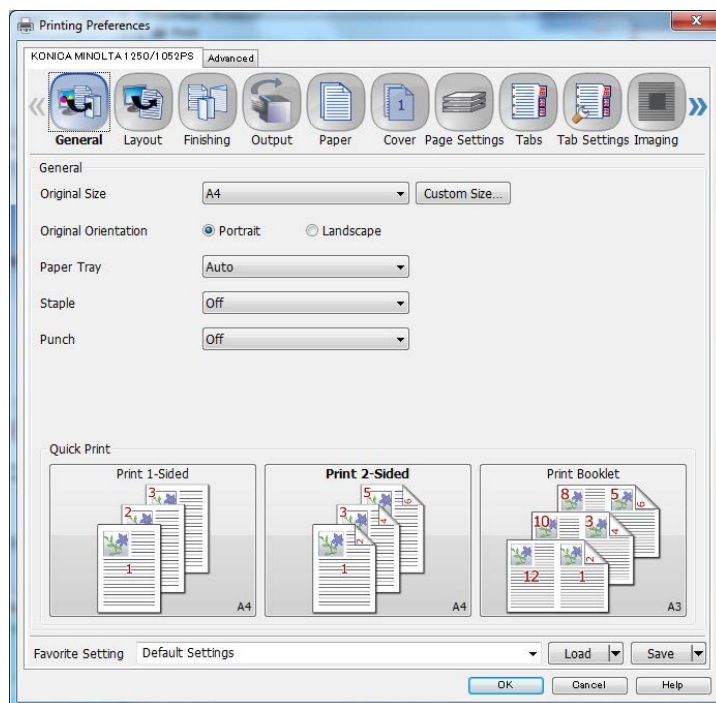
- [Save]
  - Save the current settings as the Favorite Setting.
- [Saves for All Users] (Windows only)
  - When multiple user use one computer, save the current setting as the Favorite Setting shared by all user who use the same computer.
  - Only the user with administrator privilege can use.
- [Save to File] (Windows only)
  - Save the current settings as a file.
- [Load]
  - Load the registered settings using [Save].
- [Load from File] (Windows only)
  - Load the saved settings using [Save to File].



## 11.3 Parameter details

The Printing Preferences window is the window to configure the printer driver functions. To open this window, in the Print dialog box, click [Properties] (or [Preferences]), or right-click the printer icon in the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window. Then select [Printing Preferences...].

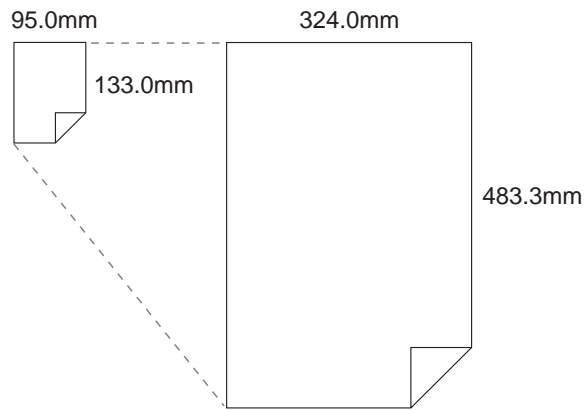
### 11.3.1 [General] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Original Size]	The paper sizes registered as the standard paper sizes and custom sizes	Select the paper size of the original. When you select the [PostScript Custom Paper Size], the original size that is entered in [PostScript Custom Paper Size] on the [Custom Size Settings] is used. In addition, when you register the Custom Paper Size Name using the [Custom Size] - [Add Custom Size], you can select the name of the original.
	[Custom Size...]	Enter or add the size. You can add the original size as [PostScript Custom Paper Size]. In addition, when you want to register the name for the original size, you can register the name and the original size in the [Add Custom Size].
[Original Orientation]	[Portrait], [Landscape]	Select the orientation for the original.
[Paper Tray]	Auto, Tray 1 - 8	Select a paper tray to be used. Selectable items vary depending on the option installation status.
[Staple]	[Off], [Corner], [2 Positions (Wide)], [2 Positions (Narrow)], [2 Positions (Narrow+)], [Left Corner], [Right Corner]	Select this check box to specify stapling. From the drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position. When [Binding Position] is [Top Bind], [Left Corner] and [Right Corner] can be specified.
[Punch]	[Off], [2-Hole], [3-Hole], [4-Hole], [Multi Punch]	Select this check box to specify hole punching. From the drop-down list, specify the number of punches and the punching position.

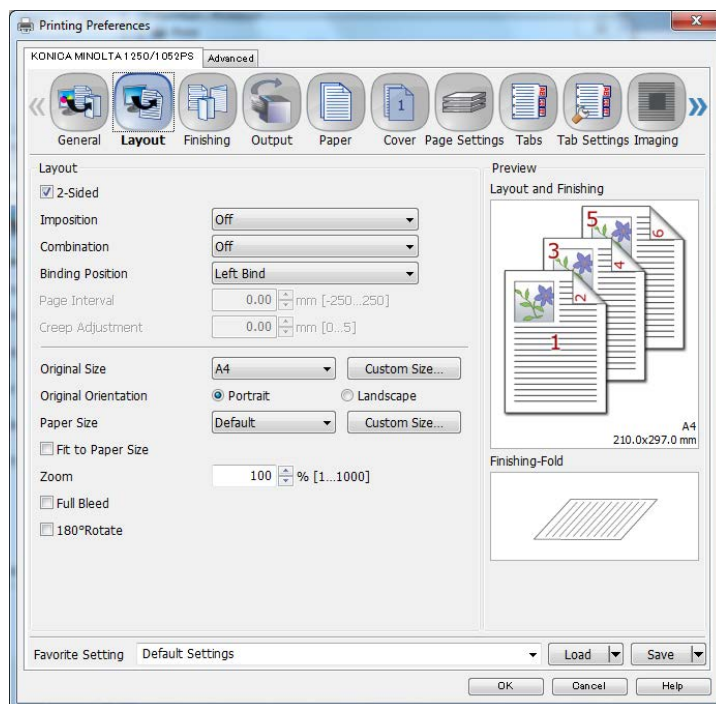
## Reference

- The custom paper size can be set on [Custom Size] within the following range:
  - Width: from 95.0 to 324.0 mm, Height: from 133.0 to 483.3 mm



- The [General] tab can be customized. For details, refer to page 11-29.

## 11.3.2 [Layout] tab

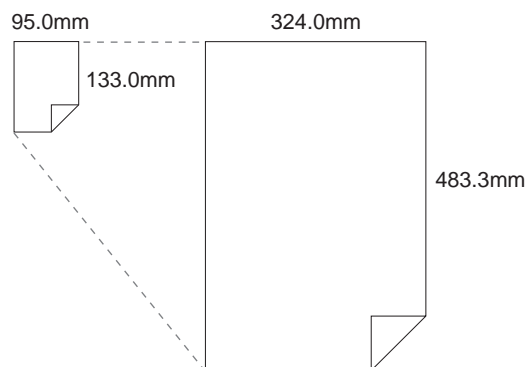


Function Name	Option	Description
[2-Sided]	Off, On	Set this to perform a 2-sided printing.
[Imposition]	[Off], [Adhesive Binding], [Booklet], [2 in 1 (Full Size)], [2 in 1 (Full Size Reverse)], [2 Repeat], [2 Repeat Reversal (Left)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Right)]	Set this to perform an imposition printing.
[Combination]	[Off] [2 in 1] [2 in 1 (Reverse)] [4 in 1] [4 in 1 (Reverse)] [6 in 1] [6 in 1 (Reverse)] [8 in 1] [8 in 1 (Reverse)] [9 in 1] [9 in 1 (Reverse)] [16 in 1] [16 in 1 (Reverse)]	Combine more than one pages onto one sheet of paper for printing.
[Binding Position]	[Left Bind], [Right Bind], [Top Bind]	Specify the binding position.
[Page Interval]	-250 to 250 mm	Set the interval between book spread pages when setting the imposition function.
[Creep Adjustment]	0 - 5 mm	Set this to adjust the page position if the outer and inner pages do not match at folding using the imposition function.

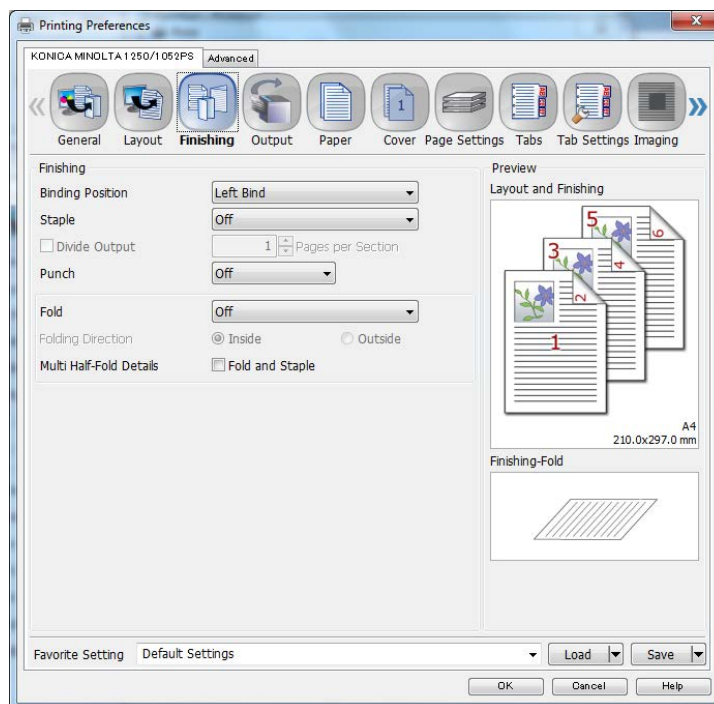
Function Name	Option	Description
[Original Size]	The paper sizes registered as the standard paper sizes and custom sizes	Select the paper size of the original. When you select the [PostScript Custom Paper Size], the original size that is entered in [PostScript Custom Paper Size] on the [Custom Size Settings] is used. In addition, when you register the Custom Paper Size Name using the [Custom Size] - [Add Custom Size], you can select the name of the original.
	[Custom Size...]	Enter or add the size. You can add the original size as [PostScript Custom Paper Size]. For the setting values of [PostScript Custom Page Size], the specified values are reflected to the [Paper Size] - [PostScript Custom Page Size]. The both values of [PostScript Custom Page Size] in the [Original Size] and the [Paper Size] are common and the value entered newly are reflected to both values. In addition, when you want to register the name for the original size, you can register the name and the original size in the [Add Custom Size].
[Original Orientation]	[Portrait], [Landscape]	Select the orientation for the original.
[Paper Size]	The paper sizes registered as the standard paper sizes and custom sizes	Set a paper size. When you select the [PostScript Custom Page Size], the paper size registered using the [Custom Size]. In addition, when you register the Custom Paper Size Name using the [Custom Size] - [Add Custom Size], you can select the name of the paper.
	[Custom Size]	Specifies or registers the size. You can register the paper size as [PostScript Custom Paper Size]. For the setting values of [PostScript Custom Page Size], the specified values are reflected to the [Paper Size] - [PostScript Custom Page Size]. The both values of [PostScript Custom Page Size] in the [Original Size] and the [Paper Size] are common and the value entered newly are reflected to both values. In addition, when you want to register the name for the paper size, you can register the name and the paper size in the [Add Custom Size].
[Fit to Paper Size]	Off, On	Set this to print an original fitting to paper if their sizes are different.
[Zoom]	1 to 1000%	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.
[Full bleed]	Off, On	Prints in the original image without blank borders.
[180° Rotate]	Off, On	Select this check box to rotate the document 180 to print.

## Reference

- The custom paper size can be set on [Custom Size] within the following range:
- Width: from 95.0 to 324.0 mm, Height: from 133.0 to 483.3 mm



## 11.3.3 [Finishing] tab



## Reference

- Depending on the settings in [Configure] tab - [Device Options], the [Finishing] tab may not be displayed.

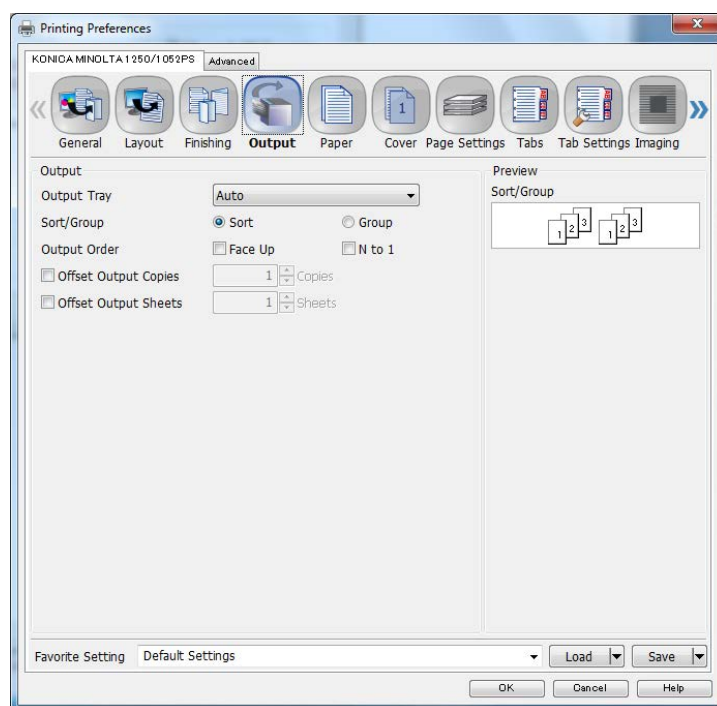
Function Name	Option	Description
[Binding Position]	[Left Bind], [Right Bind], [Top Bind]	Specify the binding position.
[Staple]	[Off], [Corner], [2 Positions (Wide)], [2 Positions (Narrow)], [2 Positions (Narrow+)], [Left Corner], [Right Corner]	Select this check box to specify stapling. From the drop-down list, specify the number of staples and the stapling position. When [Binding Position] is [Top Bind], [Left Corner] and [Right Corner] can be specified.
[Divide Output]	Off, On	Set this to output a job with it divided.
	[Pages per Section]	Select a unit when dividing a job.
[Punch]	[Off], [2-Hole], [3-Hole], [4-Hole], [Multi Punch]	Select this check box to specify hole punching. From the drop-down list, specify the number of punches and the punching position.
[Ring Binding]	[Printed Side for Top Sheet]	Set this to bind the output using ring-shaped binder. [Inside] : Prints document on inside of the top sheet. [Outside] : Prints document on outside of the top sheet.
	[Printed Side for Last Sheet]	Set this to bind the output using ring-shaped binder. [Inside] : Prints document on inside of the last sheet. [Outside] : Prints document on outside of the last sheet.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Fold]	[Off] [Half-Fold] [Z-Fold (A3/B4/Tabloid/8K)] [Z-Fold (Legal)] [Tri-Fold-In] [Tri-Fold-Out] [Double Parallel-Fold] [Gate-Fold] [Multi Tri-Fold] [Multi Half-Fold]	Set the fold function. From the drop-down list, specify the folding condition.
	[Folding Direction]	Set the folding direction.
	[Multi Half Fold Details]	When [Multi Half-Fold] is selected, [Fold and Staple], [Trim] can be set.

## Reference

- The [Staple] function is available only when an optional stapler is installed.
- The details of [Staple 2positions] are as follows:  
Wide.....about 165mm  
Narrow.....about 140mm  
Narrow+....about 120mm
- The [Punch] function is available only when an optional [Punch Unit] or [Multi Hole Punch Unit] is installed.
- The [Ring Binding] function is available only when an optional Ring Binder is installed.
- The [Fold] function is available only when an optional [Multi Folder], [Saddle Stitcher] or [Saddle Unit] is installed.

## 11.3.4 [Output] tab

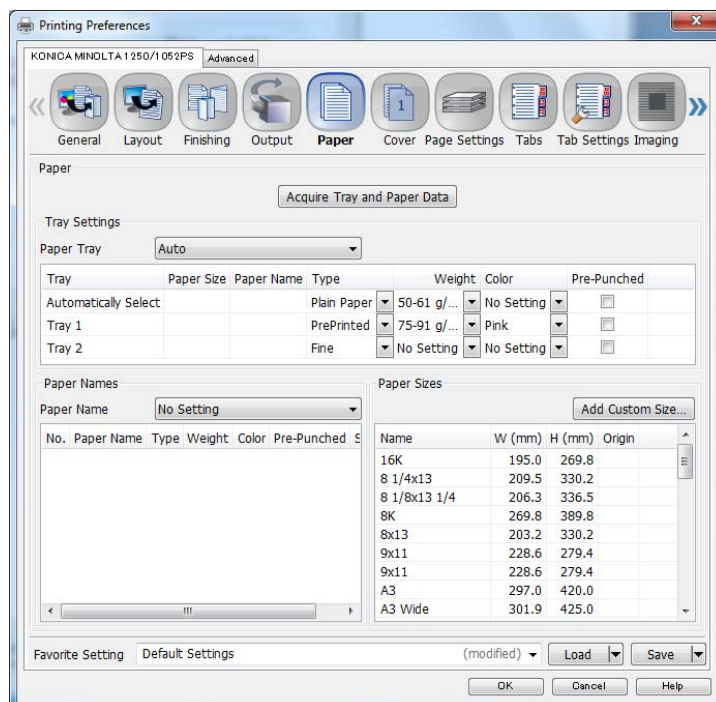


Function Name	Option	Description
[Output Tray]	[Auto] [Stacker Auto] [Stacker 1 Main Tray] [Stacker 1 Sub Tray] [Stacker 2 Main Tray] [Stacker 2 Sub Tray] [Stacker 3 Main Tray] [Stacker 3 Sub Tray] [Multi Folder Main Tray] [Multi Folder Sub Tray] [Saddle-Stitcher Sub Tray] [Stapler Main Tray] [Stapler Sub Tray] [Perfect Binder Sub Tray]	Specify the tray to output the printed pages. Selectable items vary depending on the option installation status.
[Sort/Group]	[Sort], [Group]	Specify whether multiple copies jobs are output per copy (sort) or per page(group).


Function Name	Option	Description
[Output Order]	[Face Up]	Select [Face Up] to output printed paper with its face up. When you remove the check mark, the document is output with its face down.
	[N to 1]	If you want to print an original in a reverse order, select [N to 1].
[Offset Output Copies ]	Off, On	Stagger after each set of copies specified.
[Offset Output Sheets ]	Off, On	Stagger after the number of pages specified.
[Pile Setting]	Off, On	When another printed document remains in Stacker, gives the permission to stack the output. Setting the Pile Permission to OFF allows no pile on the stacker.



## 11.3.5 [Paper] tab



## Tray Settings

Function Name	Option	Description
[Acquire Tray and Paper Data]	-	Acquires the paper tray information set and the paper profile information defined in this machine. When  appears at the right of [Acquire Tray and Paper Data], it means that the information has been acquired.
[Paper Tray]	Automatically Select, Tray 1 - 8	Displays the paper tray information set in this machine. Selectable items vary depending on the option installation status.
[Type]	[No Setting], [Plain Paper], [Coated], [PrePrinted], [Fine], [Book/News], [Embossed], [Blank Insert], [Envelope], [Embossed2]	Specify a paper type. To use the Envelope, it is necessary that the Envelope Fusing Unit (EF-102) option is installed.
[Weight]	No Setting, 40-49g/m <sup>2</sup> , 50-61g/m <sup>2</sup> , 62-74g/m <sup>2</sup> , 75-91g/m <sup>2</sup> , 92-135g/m <sup>2</sup> , 135-162g/m <sup>2</sup> , 163-216g/m <sup>2</sup> , 217-244g/m <sup>2</sup> , 245-300g/m <sup>2</sup> , 301-350g/m <sup>2</sup>  (In case of the "Unit for Paper Weight" is g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Set weight of output paper.
[Color]	[White], [Clear], [Yellow], [Pink], [Blue], [Green]	Specify color of output paper.
[Pre-Punched]	Off, On	Select this check box to print on pre-punched paper.

## Reference

- You can specify a unit of weight in the [Configure] tab. For details, refer to page 11-28.

## Paper Name

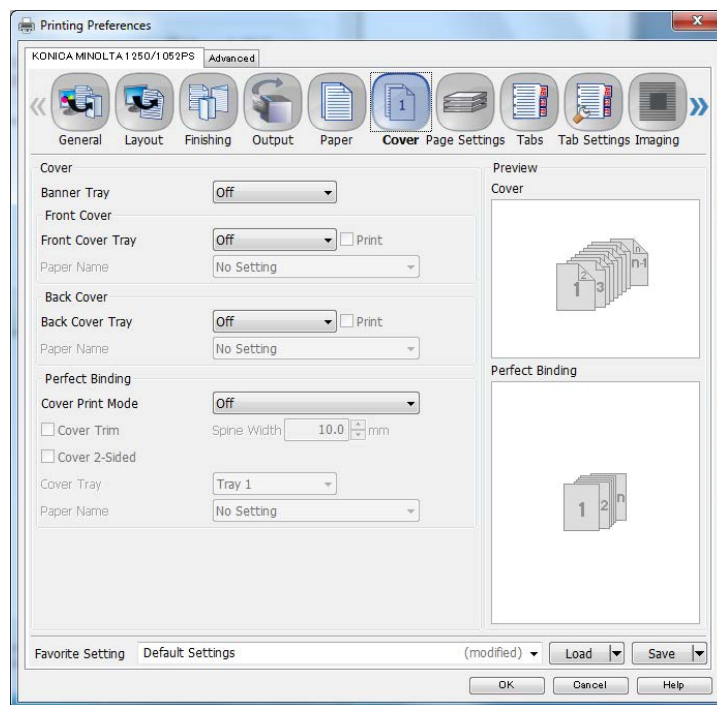
Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Name]	[No Setting], [registered paper name]	Displays the list of the registered paper name.

## Paper Size

Displays the list of the available paper size.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Add Custom Size]	-	Register a custom paper size.

### 11.3.6 [Cover] tab

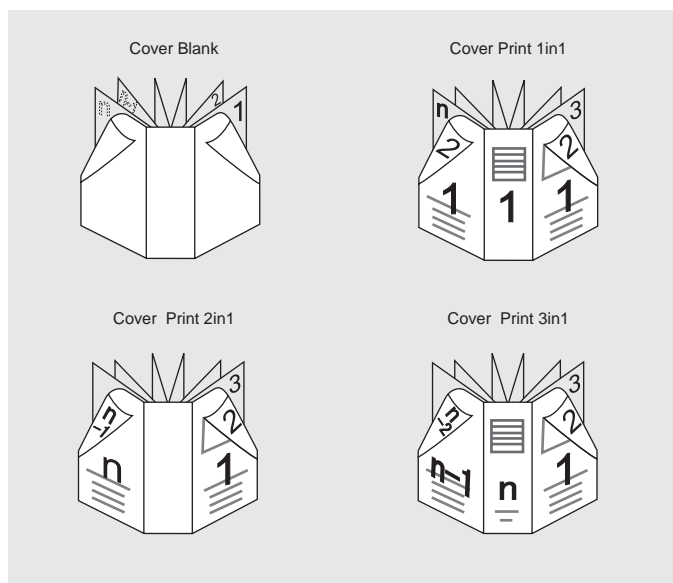


Function Name	Option	Description
[Banner Tray]	Off, Auto, Tray 1 - 8	Set a tray from which a header page is inserted.
[PI Front Cover Tray]	Off, PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3	Select when printing a different type of paper, such as thick paper, for the Front Cover. Continuous insertion is available for up to 40 sheets when [PI Tray] or [PI-PFU Tray] is selected.
[Front Cover Tray]	Off, Tray 1 - 8	Specify a tray for a front cover.
	[Print]	Select this check box to print on a front cover.
[Paper Name] (PI Front Cover)	[No Setting], [registered paper name]	Select the registered paper name. You can add a new paper name to the list from the control panel on this machine.
[Back Cover Tray]	Off, Tray 1 - 8	Specify a tray for a back cover.
	[Print]	Select this check box to print on a back cover.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Name] (Back Cover)	[No Setting], [registered paper name]	Select the registered paper name. You can add a new paper name to the list from the control panel on this machine.
[PI Back Cover Tray]	Off, PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3	Select when printing a different type of paper, such as thick paper, for the Back Cover. Continuous insertion is available for up to 40 sheets when [PI Tray] or [PI-PFU Tray] is selected.
[Cover Print Mode]	[Cover Blank] [Cover Print 1in1 (Portrait Cover)] [Cover Print 1in1 (Landscape Cover)] [Cover Print 2in1], [Cover Print 3in1]	Set this when using a perfect binder function. For detail, refer to page 11-16.
[Cover Trim]	Off, On	Set this when trimming a cover for a perfect binder.
[Spine Width]	1.0 - 30.0 mm	Set the width of a spine.
[Cover 2-Sided]	Off, On	Set this when setting a duplex cover for a perfect binder.
[Cover Tray]	Tray 1-8 PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3 PB Cover Tray	You can set a cover tray for a perfect binder.
[Paper Name]	-	You can specify the paper name that is registered in this machine.

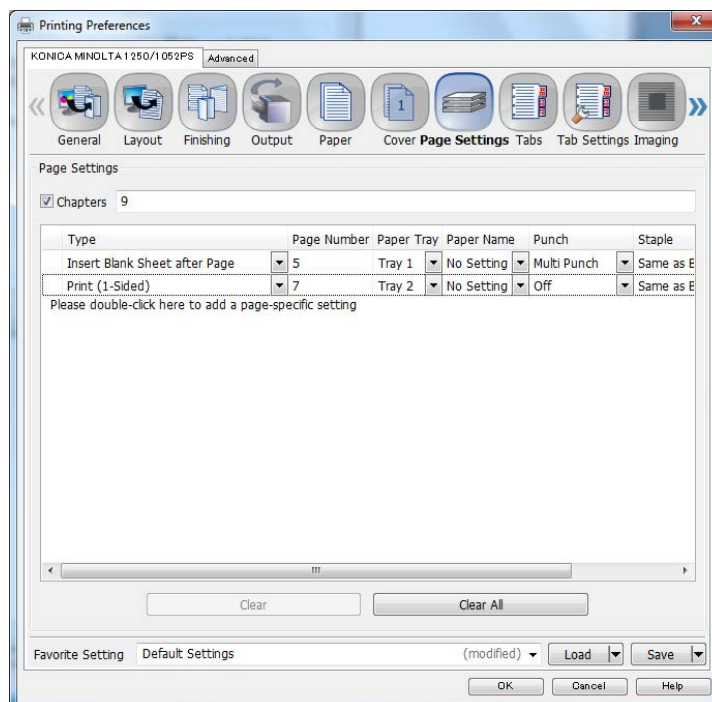
## Perfect Binding Mode

Perfect Binding mode has the following 4 types:



Function Name	Description
[Cover Blank]	Cover wraps the body of document without being printed.
[Cover Print 1in1]	This is used when arrangements are made in advance for the originals the front cover, the back cover and the spine of which have been cut and pasted to the same size as the paper used as the front cover.
[Cover Print 2in1]	For the front cover, the first page and the last page (n page) of the originals are made as 2in1, and the second page up to the last page but one (n - 1 page) are printed as the body of documents with no printing made on the spine for perfect binding.
[Cover Print 3in1]	After cutting and pasting automatically the first page of the original on the front cover, the last page but one (n - 1 page) on the back cover, and the last page (n page) on 3in1 as the spine, the front cover is printed. And the second page up to the last page but two (n - 2 page) are printed as the body of documents.

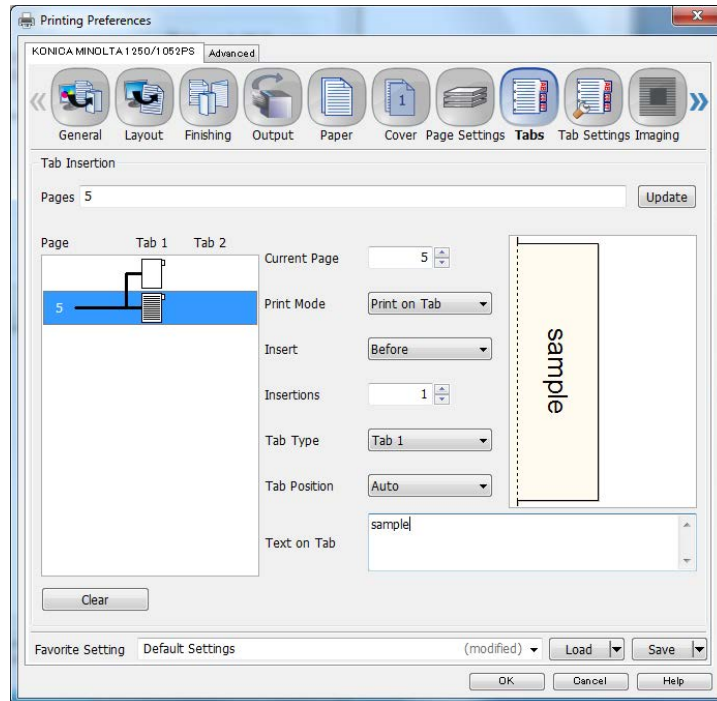
## 11.3.7 [Page Settings] tab



You can set paper and print settings for each page.

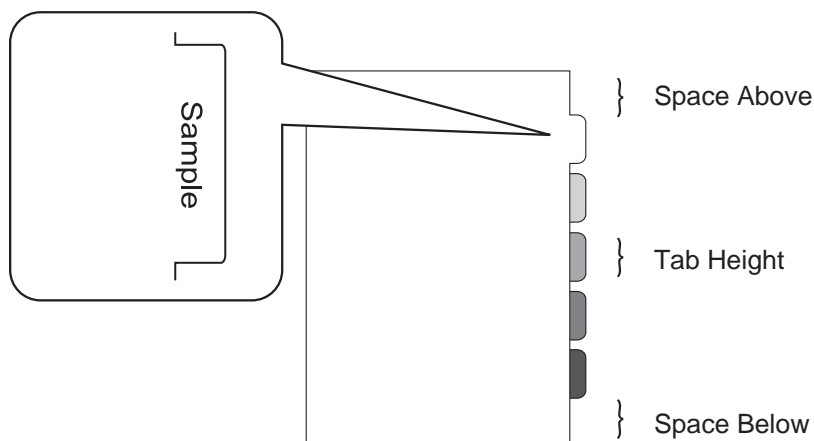
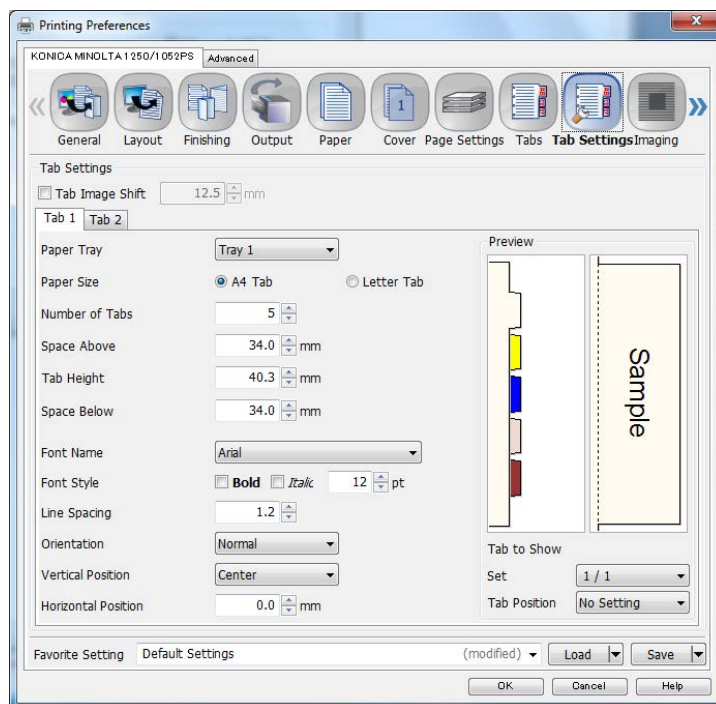
Function Name	Option	Description
[Chapters]	Off, On	Select this check box to specify the page to be printed on the front side. When you check the [Chapters], [2-Sided] is turned on automatically. To specify a page or page range, separate each page number with a comma or specify the range using a hyphen. (For example : 2,5 7-10)
Page Setting	[Type]	Set a print type for a page specified in [Page Number]. Select [Same as Body] to apply the setting for the original.
	[Page Number]	Set the page number for setting Page Settings.
	[Paper Tray]	Set a print tray for a page specified in [Page Number]. When [Auto] is selected, paper is supplied according to the tray priority specified on the control panel.
	[Paper Name]	Set a paper name for a page specified in [Page Number].
	[Number of Sheets]	Set a number of white sheets to insert in a page specified in [Page Number].
	[Punch]	Set a punch hole for a page specified in [Page Number]. Select [Same as Body] to apply the setting for the original.
	[Staple]	Set a staple for a page specified in [Page Number]. Select [Same as Body] to apply the setting for the original.
	[Finish Stapling]	Check when sectioning staples.
[Clear]	Clear the selected page settings.	
[Clear All]	Clear all page settings.	

## 11.3.8 [Tabs] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Pages]	-	Specify a page to insert a tab. To apply the setting, click [Update].
[Current Page]	-	You can change the page for the selected tab.
[Print Mode]	[Print on Tab], [Print on Body]	Specify whether to print on tab or body.
[Insert]	[Off], [Before], [After]	Specify whether to insert a blank tab before or after the page.
[Insertions]	-	Specify a number of blank tabs to insert.
[Tab Type]	[Tab 1], [Tab 2]	Specify the tab type.
[Tab Position]	Auto, 1/15 - 15/15	Specify the tab position. Specify the number of tabs in the [Tab Settings] tab.
[Text on Tab]	-	Input a text on a tab. You can enter up to 3 lines.

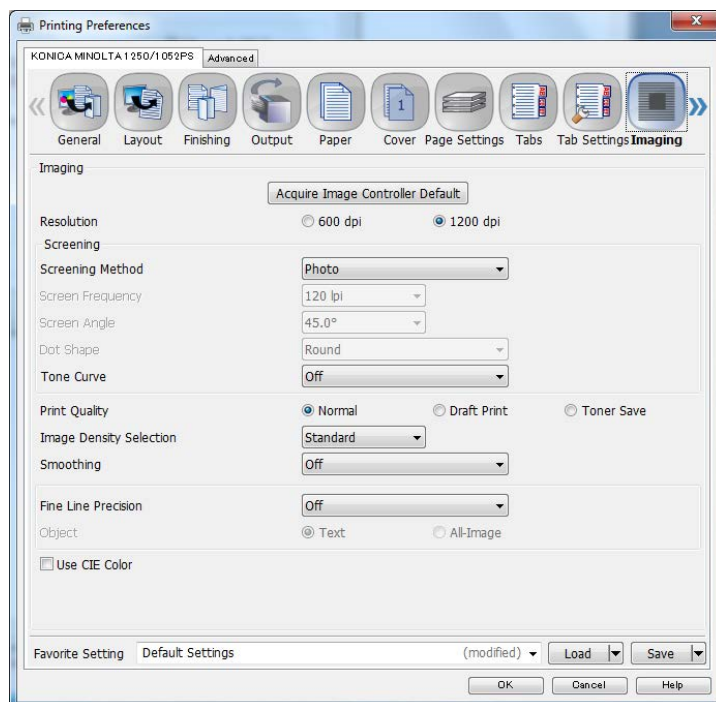
## 11.3.9 [Tab Settings] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Tab Image Shift]	Off, On	Select this check box to shift an image on a tab to the right. It can be set from 10.0 mm to 15.0 mm (in 0.1 mm increments).
[Tab 1]/[Tab 2]	-	You can define 2 types of tab. For example, 5 for [Tab 1] and 15 for [Tab 2].
[Paper Tray]	Tray 1 - 8	Select a paper tray for a tab.
[Paper Size]	[A4 Tab], [Letter tab]	Select a paper size for a tab.
[Number of Tabs]	-	Specify a number of tabs.
[Space Above]	-	Input the value for [Space Above].
[Tab Height]	-	Input the value for [Tab Height].
[Space Below]	-	Input the value for [Space Below].
[Font Name]	-	Specify a font for a tab character.
[Font Style]	[Bold], [Italic], [point]	Specify a style for a tab character.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Line Spacing]	-	Specify a spacing between tab characters.
[Orientation]	[Normal], [Flipped], [Horizontal], [Vertical]	Specify a direction of a tab character.
[Vertical Position]	[Top], [Center], [Bottom]	Specify a vertical position of a tab character.
[Horizontal Position]	-	Specify a horizontal position of a tab character. By default, the tab character is placed at the center to the tab.

### 11.3.10 [Imaging] tab

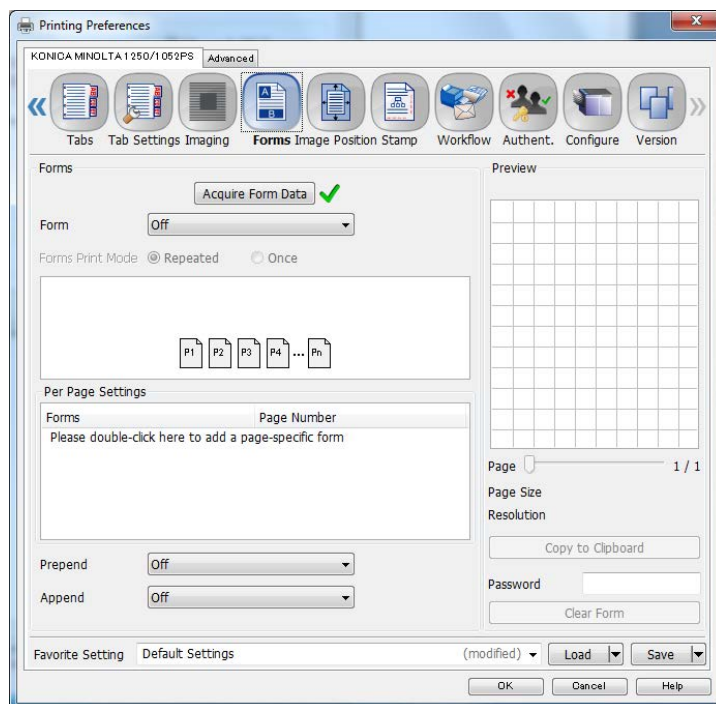


Function Name	Option	Description
[Acquire Image Controller Default]	-	Communicate with the machine to acquire the default screening information of the image controller.
[Resolution]	[600dpi], [1200dpi]	Select a resolution.
[Screening Method]	[Photo], [Text], [Text/Photo], [Dot Screen]	Specify the screening method.
[Screen Frequency]	[40 lpi] to [300 lpi]	Specify the screen frequency when you select the [Dot Screen] in the [Screening Method].
[Screen Angle]	[0.0°] to [172.5°]	Specify the screen angle when you select the [Dot Screen] in the [Screening Method].




Function Name	Option	Description
[Dot Shape]	[Simple Dot] [Inverted Simple Dot] [Double Dot] [Inverted Double Dot] [Cosine Dot] [Double] [Inverted Double] [Line] [Line X] [Line Y] [Round] [Ellipse] [Ellipse A] [Inverted Ellipse A] [Ellipse B] [Ellipse C] [Inverted Ellipse C] [Square] [Cross] [Rhomboid] [Diamond]	Specify the dot shape when you select the [Dot Screen] in the [Screening Method]. Refer to help information of printer driver to confirm the dot shape.
[Tone Curve]	-	Select the tone curve name acquired from the image controller. You can specify the tone curve settings using the "ToneCurve Utility" application.
[Print Quality]	[Normal], [Draft Print], [Toner Save]	Specify the print quality. [Draft Print] corresponds with [Image Density Selection] - [-2] and [Toner Save] corresponds with [Image Density Selection] - [-4].
[Image Density Selection]	[-5] to [-1] [Standard], [+1]	Adjust the print density. Move the slider toward plus to deepen the density and move the slider toward minus to lighten the density.
[Smoothing]	[Off] [Type 1] [Type 2] [Type 3]	Select this check box to set smoothing. [Smoothing] is available only when [600 dpi] and Thinning are selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [Type 1]: Performs processing appropriate for diagonal lines in general text and diagram.</li> <li>• [Type 2]: Performs processing appropriate for curves in general text.</li> <li>• [Type 3]: Performs processing appropriate for curves in dingbat and small letters</li> </ul>
[Fine line Precision]	[Off] [Level 1] [Level 2] [Level 3] [Level 4]	When you print small letters, printing result might become illegible depending on the contents of the original documents. In this case, setting [Fine line Precision] enables to read small letters. The higher you set the level, the line becomes thinner.
[Object]	[Text ] [All-image]	Specify the target when the [Fine line Precision] is set.
[Use CIE Color]	Off, On	Select this check box to use a CIE color space at printing in gray scale. However, if you use this function, the printing speed becomes slightly slower.

## 11.3.11 [Forms] tab

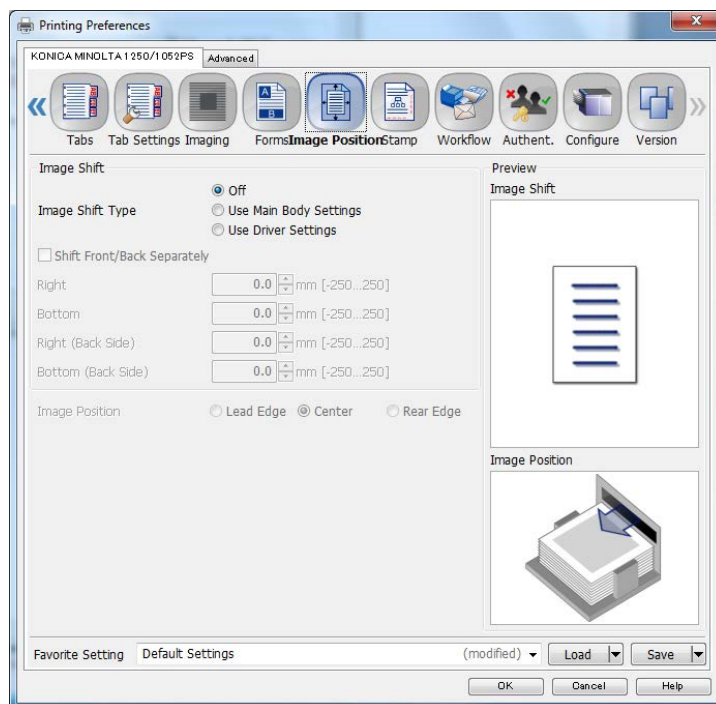


The form image file can be superimposed.

Select [WorkFlow] tab - [Print Mode] - [From] to save a form file. For details, refer to page 11-25.

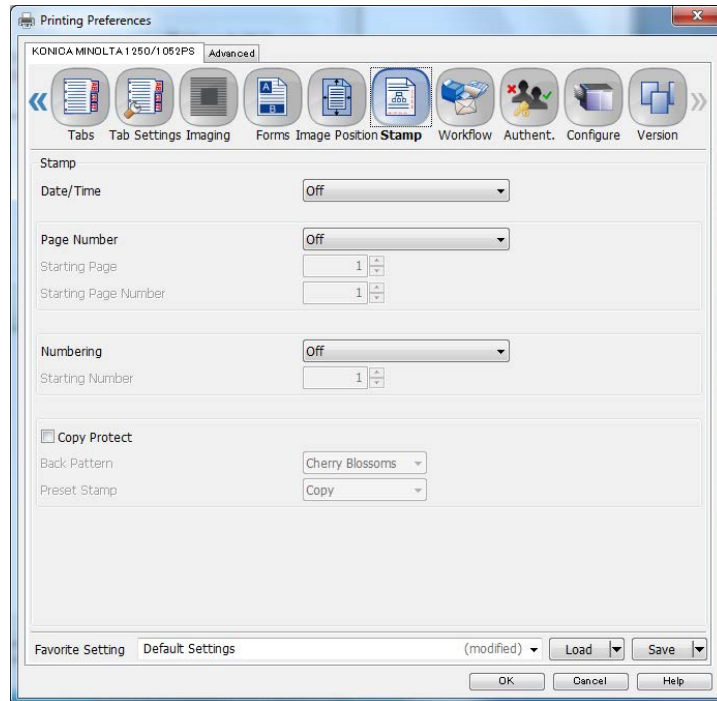
Function Name	Option	Description
[Acquire Form Data]	-	Communicate with the machine to acquire the form information saved in the image controller. When  appears at the right of [Acquire Form Data], it means that the form information has been acquired.
[Form]	[Off], [Registered form name.]	Set the form function.
[Forms Print Mode]	[Repeated], [Once]	Select [Repeated] to overlay all form pages repeatedly in order from the first page on a printing document. Select [Once] to overlay all forms pages only once in order from the first page on a printing document.
[Per Page Settings]	[Form], [Page Number]	You can set an overlay on a page basis. However, the maximum number will be different depending on the selected form and page.
[Prepend]	[Off], [Registered form name.]	Set the selected form before the current job.
[Append]	[Off], [Registered form name.]	Set the selected form after the current job.
[Copy to Clipboard]	-	Click to copy the preview page to the clipboard. You can check a layout by pasting the image from the clipboard onto a printing document.
[Clear Form]	-	Click to clear the selected form from the image controller. You need to input a password to clear the form. The password is set in the machine. For details, refer to page 15-10.

## 11.3.12 [Image Position] tab



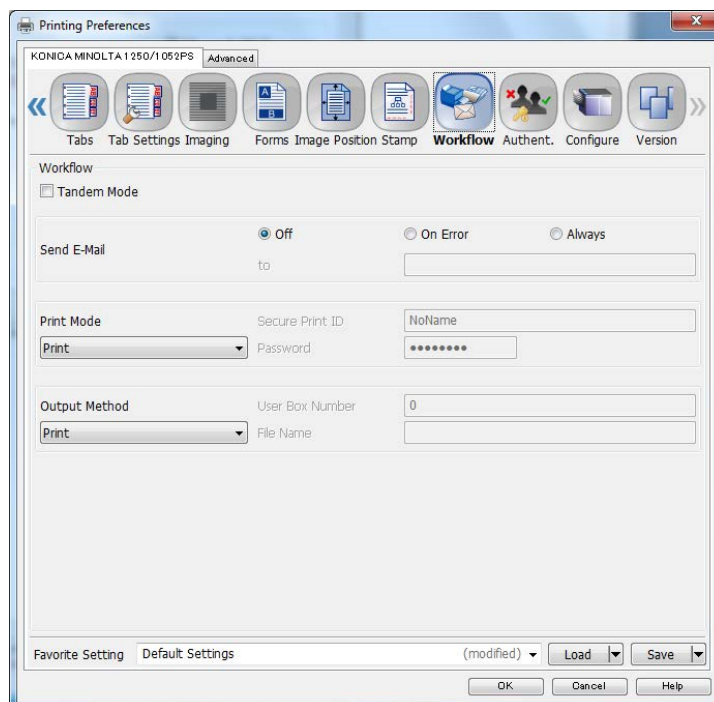
Function Name	Option	Description
[Image Shift]	[Off], [Use Main Body Settings], [Use Driver Settings]	Specify the position of printing image. When you output using the settings of the [Image Shift] specified in the machine, select the [Use Main Body Setting]. When you specify on this printer driver, select the [Use Driver Settings].
[Shift Front/Back Separately]	Off, On	When you use the same settings for front side and back side, mark this check box.
[Right]	-	The printing image on the front side shifts horizontally. (Positive value: shift to the right, negative value: shift to the left) When you check the [Shift Front/Back Separately], the printing image on Back side also shifts.
[Bottom]	-	The printing image on the front side shifts vertically. (Positive value: shift to the bottom, negative value: shift to the top) When you check the [Shift Front/Back Separately], the printing image on Back side also shifts.
[Right (Back Side)]	-	The printing image on the back side shifts horizontally. (Positive value: shift to the right, negative value: shift to the left)
[Bottom (Back Side)]	-	The printing image on the back side shifts vertically. (Positive value: shift to the bottom, negative value: shift to the top)
[Image Position]	[Lead Edge], [Center], [Rear Edge]	When you select a wide size or custom size as paper size setting, you need to specify the image position.

## 11.3.13 [Stamp] tab



Function Name	Option	Description
[Date/Time]	[Off], [All Pages], [1st Page Only]	Select [1st Page Only] or [All Pages] when printing [Date/Time].
[Page Number]	[Off], [All Pages], [Other than 1st Page], [Other than 1st/Last Page]	Specify [All Pages], [Other than 1st Page], or [Other than 1st/Last Page] when printing [Page Number].
[Starting Page]	-	Specify a page to start printing the number when printing [Page Number]. 1-9999 page(s) can be input.
[Starting Page Number]	-	Specify the starting page number when printing [Page Number]. 1-9999 page(s) can be input.
[Numbering]	[Off], [Stamp for All Pages], [Stamp for 1st Page Only], [Watermark for All Pages]	To output [Numbering], select the [Stamp for All Pages], [Stamp for 1st Page Only], [Watermark for All Pages].
[Starting Number]	-	Specify a starting number when printing [Numbering]. 1-9999 page(s) can be input.
[Copy Protect]	Off, On	Set this to combines the selected document with the copy protect pattern to protect from unauthorized copying
[Back Pattern]	[Cherry Blossoms], [Arabesque], [Lattice]	Select the background pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect].
[Preset Stamp]	[Copy], [Invalid], [Illegal copy], [Invalid Copy]	Select the text pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect].

## 11.3.14 [WorkFlow] tab

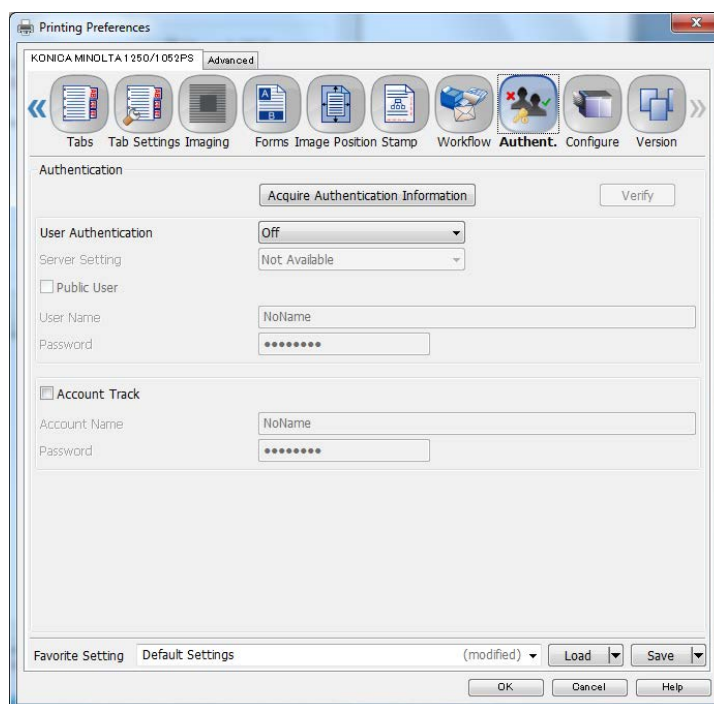


Function Name	Option	Description
[Tandem Mode]	Off, On	Set this to output from two printers using the tandem connection.
[Send E-mail]	[Off], [On Error], [Always]	Set this to send an E-mail to a specified address after completing a print job.
[Print Mode]	[Print] [Proof Print] [Proof Print (1st sheet)] [Wait Mode] [Hold Print] [Secure Print]	<p>Select a print method.</p> <p>[Print] : The print job is printed without it being stored in a hard disk.</p> <p>[Proof Print] : You can print one copy to check the output.</p> <p>[Proof Print (1st sheet)]: You can print the first page to check the output.</p> <p>[Wait Mode]: You can pause the printing job to checks current setting from the control panel on this machine.</p> <p>[Hold Print] : You can store the print job temporarily as a hold job. Use this when you want to print at once at night.</p> <p>[Secure Print]: You can not output until you input the Secure Print ID and password on the control panel on this machine. Select this to print a confidential documents for protection. For details on this procedures, refer to page 14-2.</p>

Function Name	Option	Description
[Output Method]	[Print] [Save in User Box] [Save in User Box and Print] [Form]	<p>Select the output method.</p> <p>[Print] : The print job is printed without it being stored in a hard disk.</p> <p>[Save in User Box]: The print job is stored in the hard disk in the main body. Specify the box number and file name to store in the hard disk. For details on this procedures, refer to page 14-6.</p> <p>[Save in User Box and Print] : The print job is stored in the hard disk in the main body and then printed. Specify the box number and file name to store in the hard disk For details, refer to page 14-6.</p> <p>[Form]: You can save an image file to the image controller and use it as a background in the [Form] tab for this driver. Refer to page 11-22 for more detailed information on [From].</p>

**NOTICE**

Even If you select the [Default Settings] in the [Favorite Setting], the settings of the [ID] and [Password] specified in the [Secure Print].is kept.

**11.3.15 [Authent.] tab**

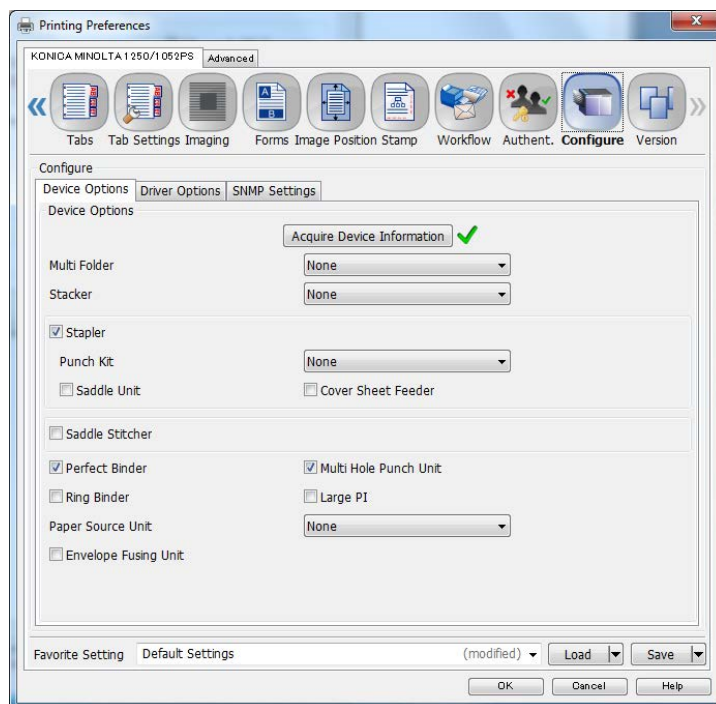
Function Name	Option	Description
[Acquire Authentication Information]	-	Communicates with this machine and acquire the information for User Authentication or Account Track.
[Verify]	-	You can confirm whether the user and account information is recognized or not by clicking the Verify on the Authentication Settings dialog box displayed from Basic tab.

Function Name	Option	Description
[User Authentication]	[Off], [Main Body], [External Server], [Enhanced Server]	When the User Authentication function is enabled, select the [Main Body], [External Server], or [Enhanced Server] as the Authentication server. For details, refer to page 14-15.
[Server Setting]	[Off] Installed authentication server	When there are multiple Authentication servers, select the Authentication server to be used for authentication from among authentication servers registered in the printer.
[Public User]	Off, On	Set this to access to the image controller as a public user. For details, refer to page 14-15.
[User Name]	-	Specify the user name to access to the image controller as a registered user. For details, refer to page 14-15.
[Password]	-	Specify the password to access to the image controller as a registered user. For details, refer to page 14-15.
[Account Track]	Off, On	Set an account name and password to a print job if the user authentication function is enabled in the machine. This identification information is used to track the number of printouts. You need to input the account name and password to print if [Account Track] is checked. For details, refer to page 14-17.
[Account Name]	-	Specify the account name to print when you enable the [Account Track] check box. For details, refer to page 14-17.
[Password]	-	Specify the password to print when you enable the [Account Track] check box. For details, refer to page 14-17.
[Reenter]	-	Reenter the password for confirmation to print when you enable the [Account Track] check box. For details, refer to page 14-17.


#### Important

- Even If you select the [Default Settings] in the [Favorite Setting], the settings of the [User Authentication] and [Account Track Setting] are kept.

## 11.3.16 [Configure] tab



## [Device Options] tab

Item Name	Function
[Acquire Device Information]	Press this to detect an optional device installed on this machine. When  appears at the right of [Acquire Device Information], it means that the device information has been acquired.
[Multi Folder]	You can use the Fold and Punch functions.
[Stacker]	Select this to output papers in large volume printing.
[Stapler]	You can use the staple function.
[Punch Kit]	You can use the punch function.
[Saddle Unit]	You can use functions such as [Multi Tri-Fold], [Multi Half-Fold], and [Fold and Staple].
[Cover Sheet Feeder]	Select this to insert the PI Front/Back Cover.
[Saddle Sticher]	Select this to set [Fold and Staple].
[Perfect Binder]	Select this to set [Perfect Binding].
[Multi Hole Punch Unit]	You can use the multi-hole punch function.
[Ring Binder]	You can bind the output using ring-shaped binder.
[Large PI]	Select this to insert the PI Front/Back Cover in large volume printing.
[Paper Source Unit]	You can use the tray 3 - 8 as the paper tray.
[Envelope Fusing Unit]	Select this option to use the Envelope.
[Unit]	Specify a unit.
[Language]	Specify a language. [Language] is only for Windows.

**Reference**

For details on the paper sizes loadable in the paper trays, refer to [User's Guide (Copier)].



**[Driver Options] tab**

Item Name	Function
[Normalize PostScript]	Set this to use the applications that have their own PostScript driver based on a PPD.
[MacOS Keychain]	User Name and Password can be registered with key chain access when setting [User Authentication] and [Account Track]. [MacOS Keychain] is only for Mac.
[Unit]	Specify a unit.
[Weight Unit]	Set a unit of weight.
[Language]	Specify a language.
[Customize General Panel]	You can set the item to be displayed on the [General] tab.

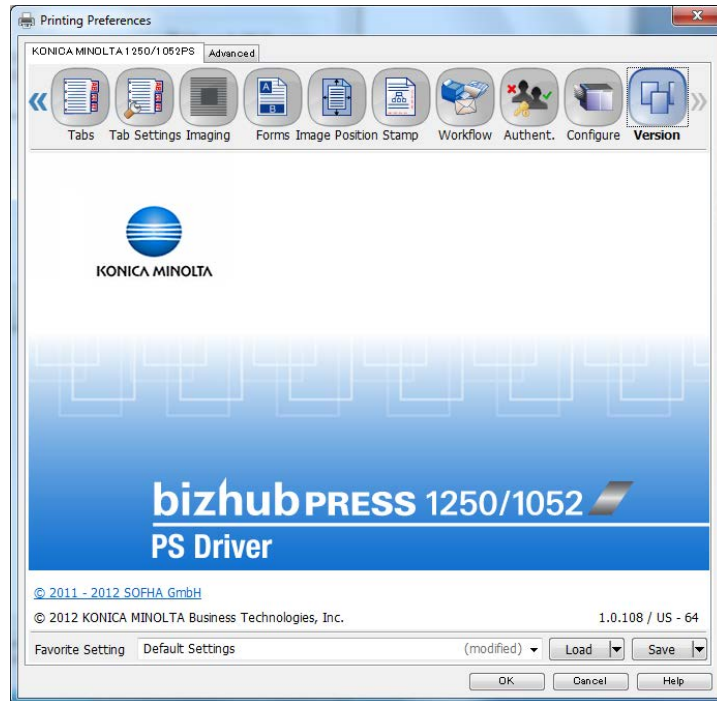
**[SNMP] tab**

Item Name	Function
[SNMP Version]	Specify the SNMP version.
[Read Community Name]	Specify the community name. Reenter the community name for confirmation in Reenter field.
[Context Name]	Specify the context name.
[Read User Name]	Specify the user name.
[Security Level]	Select the security level. [Auth-Password] : The password is necessary to be authenticated. [Auth-Password/Priv-Password] : The encrypted password is necessary to be authenticated.
[Read User Auth-Password]	Specify the auth-password. Reenter the auth-password for confirmation in Reenter field.
[Read UserPriv-Password]	Specify the encrypted auth-password. Reenter the encrypted auth-password for confirmation in the Reenter field.

**Note**

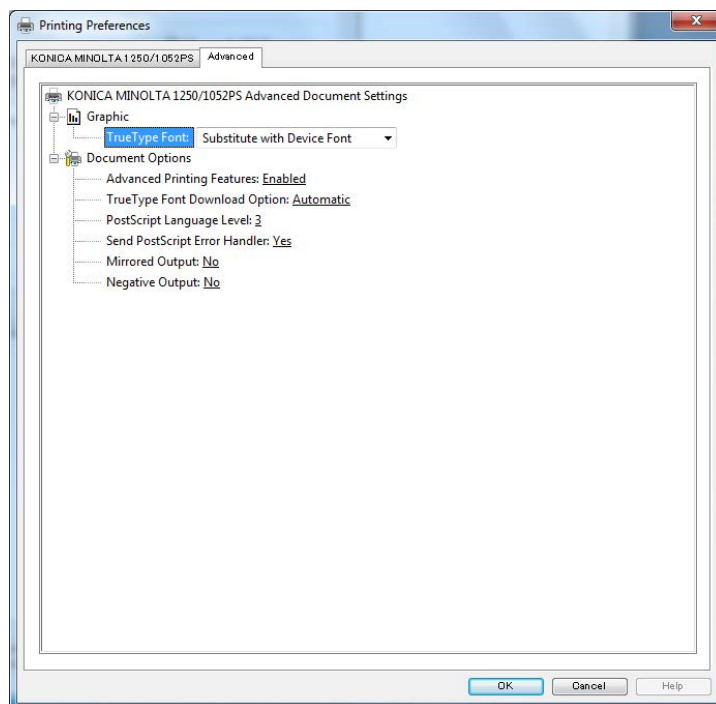
- When SNMP setting is specified on the image controller, it is necessary to enter the name or other information to the corresponding fields. For information to be entered, contact the administrator of the machine.

## 11.3.17 [Version] tab



You can check the version of this driver.

## 11.3.18 [Advanced] tab



You can set options for PostScript in the [Advanced] tab.

Function Name	Option	Description
[TrueType Font]	[Substitute with Device Font], [Download as Softfont]	Set this to substitute a font with a TrueType font. Select [Substitute with Device Font] if you want the printer to select a similar font instead of downloading the font set. It can shorten the printing time; however, a special character that is not included in the substituted font may be garbled. Select [Download as Softfont] to download the TrueType font to the printer.
[Advanced Printing Features]	[Enabled], [Disabled]	Specify whether to enable or disable the advanced printing features.
[TrueType Font Download Option]	[Automatic], [Outline], [Bitmap], [Native TrueType]	Specify the download mode of a TrueType font.
[PostScript Language Level]	1 - 3	Specify a PostScript language level. The higher the PostScript language level is, the more functions become available. You may achieve an proper compatibility by lowering the PostScript language level if you print an incompatible document.
[Send PostScript Error Handler]	[Yes], [No]	Specify whether to send a PS error message or not. Select [Yes] to output an error message from a printer at a print error.
[Mirrored Output]	[Yes], [No]	Specify whether to perform a mirrored print or not.
[Negative Output]	[Yes], [No]	Specify whether to perform a negative print or not.

---

# 12

**Print functions of PPD driver  
for Windows**

## 12 Print functions of PPD driver for Windows

This chapter describes the functions of the PPD printer driver for Windows.

For detailed information on the basic print methods, refer to page 9-2.

### 12.1 Default settings of the printer driver

After installing the printer driver, you have to configure installable options in the [Device Setting] screen before printing.

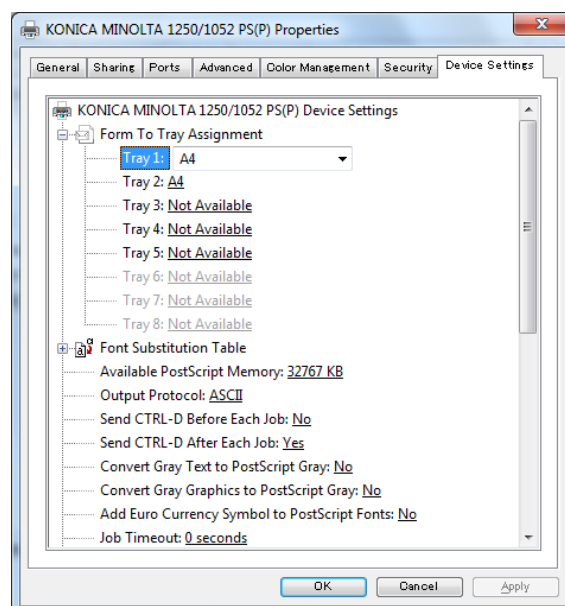
#### **NOTICE**

*Any options that are installed in this machine but not configured in the [Device Setting] tab cannot be used in the [Printing Preferences] screen of the printer driver. Be sure to set the optional device if there is any.*

#### 12.1.1 Displaying the Properties window

- 1** Open the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], open [Control Panel], and then click [Printers] in [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - In Windows 7, click [Start], then [Devices and Printers].
  - In Windows 7, if [Devices and Printers] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, and select [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, click [Start], then [Printers and Faxes].
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, if [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Other Hardware], then [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2** Open [Printer Properties] or [Properties] window.
  - In Windows XP/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Properties].
  - In Windows 7, right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printer Properties].

### 12.1.2 [Device Settings] tab



Specify the Installable Options settings.

[Paper Source Unit]	You can use the tray 3 - 8 as the paper tray.
[Saddle Unit]	You can use functions such as [Multi Tri-Fold], [Multi Half-Fold], and [Fold and Staple].
[Stapler]	You can use the staple function.
[Multi Hole Punch Unit]	You can use the multi-hole punch function.
[Ring Binder]	You can bind the output using ring-shaped binder.
[Punch Z-Fold Unit]	You can use the Fold and Punch functions.
[Cover Sheet Feeder]	Select this to insert the PI Front/Back Cover.
[Large PI]	Select this to insert the PI Front/Back Cover in large volume printing.
[Perfect Binder]	Select this to set [Perfect Binding].
[Stacker]	Select this to output papers in large volume printing.
[Envelope Fusing Unit]	Select this option to use the Envelope.

### 12.1.3 About tabs provided by OS

Windows provides [General], [Sharing], [Port], [Advanced], [Color Management] and [Security] tabs.

Using these tabs, you can print a test page and specify the shared printer and the printer port.

For details, please refer to the Windows User's Guide.

### 12.1.4 Registering the default settings

The settings for the machine functions configured when printing can only be applied while using the application. When you exit the application, the settings return to their default settings.

To register the settings, change the printer driver basic settings (default settings).

- 1** Open the [Devices and Printers], [Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window.
  - In Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2, click [Start], open [Control Panel], and then click [Printers] in [Hardware and Sound]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
  - In Windows 7, click [Start], then [Devices and Printers].
  - In Windows 7, if [Devices and Printers] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, and select [View devices and printers] under [Hardware and Sound].
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, click [Start], then [Printers and Faxes].
  - In Windows XP/Server 2003, if [Printers and Faxes] is not displayed in the [Start] menu, open [Control Panel] from the [Start] menu, select [Printers and Other Hardware], then [Printers and Faxes]. When [Control Panel] is displayed in Classic View, double-click [Printers].
- 2** Right-click the icon of the installed printer, and click [Printing Preferences...].  
The [Printing Preferences] dialog box of the printer appears.
- 3** Change the settings of the function, and then click [OK] to exit the function.  
The changed settings are applied when the printer is used by all of the application software.

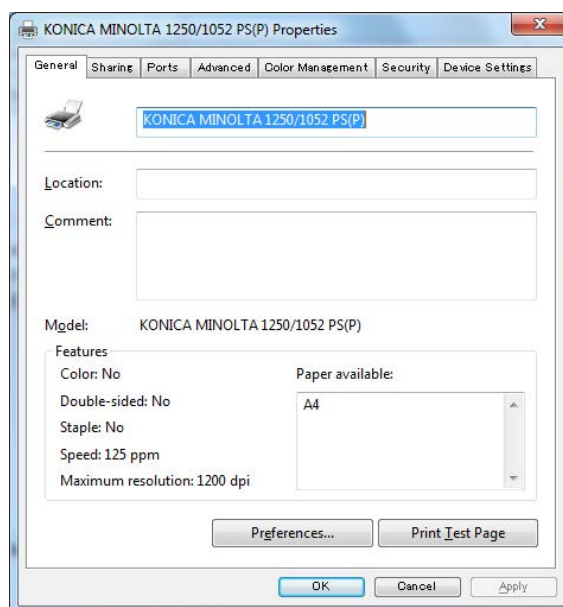


#### Reference

*For details on the function and settings of the printer driver, refer to page 12-6.*

## 12.2 Common Setting

This section describes the settings and buttons common to tabs.



Item Name	Function
[OK]	Click this button to enable changed settings and close the properties window.
[Cancel]	Click this button to disable (cancel) changed settings and close the properties window.
[Apply]	Check this button to save the current tab setting.

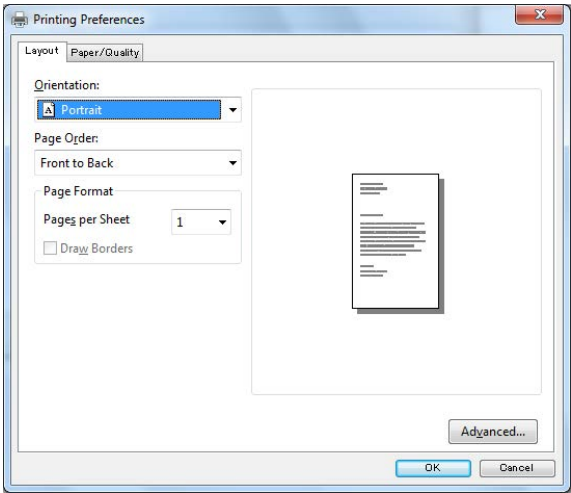


12.3 Parameter details

The Printing Preferences window is the window to configure the printer driver functions. To open this window, in the Print dialog box, click [Properties] (or [Preferences]), or right-click the printer icon in the [Printers], [Devices and Printers], or [Printers and Faxes] window. Then select [Printing Preferences...].

12.3.1 [Layout] tab

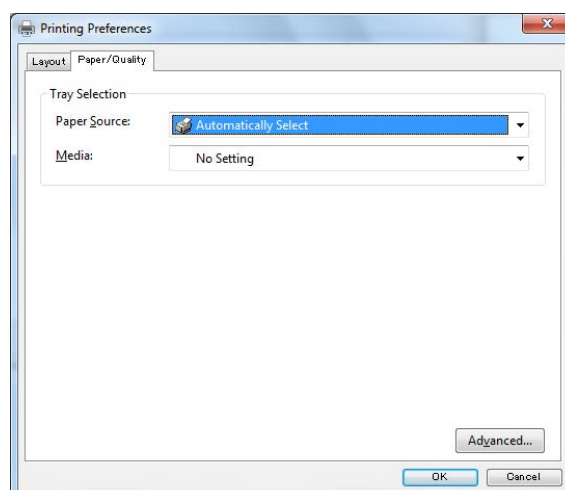
You can set the print orientation, page order, and number of pages per sheet.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Orientation]	[Portrait], [Landscape], [Rotated Landscape]	Select the orientation for the original.
[Page Order]	[Front to Back], [Back to Front]	Specify a page order to print.
[Pages per Sheet]	1, 2, 4, 6, 9, 16	Specify a number of pages allocated on one sheet.
	[Draw Borders]	Set a border between allocated pages.
[Advanced...]		Press this button to display the Advanced Options window.

### 12.3.2 [Paper/Quality] tab

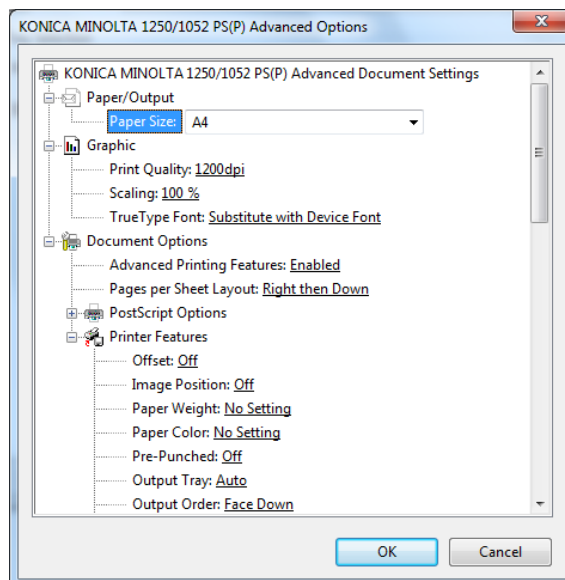
You can set a paper source and paper type.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Source]	Tray 1 - 5	Select a paper tray.
[Media]	[No Setting], [Plain Paper], [Coated], [PrePrinted], [Fine], [Book/News], [Embossed], [Blank Insert], [Envelope], [Embossed2]	Specify a paper type. To use the Envelope, it is necessary that the Envelope Fusing Unit (EF-102) option is installed.
[Advanced...]		Display the [Advanced Options] window.

### 12.3.3 [Advanced Options] window

You can specify the printer's advanced functions.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Size]	All paper sizes available in this machine	Set a paper size.
[Print Quality]	[600dpi], [1200dpi]	Select a resolution.
[Scaling]	1 to 1000%	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.
[TrueType Font]	[Substitute with Device Font], [Download as Softfont]	Specify an output method of a TrueType font.
[Advanced Printing Features]	[Enabled], [Disabled]	Set this to enable the [Pages per Sheet Layout] function.
[Pages per Sheet Layout]	[Right then Down], [Down then Right], [Left then Down], [Down then Left]	Set this to enable the [Pages per Sheet Layout] function.
[PostScript Output Option]	[Optimize for Speed], [Optimize for Portability], [Encapsulated PostScript (EPS)], [Archive Format]	Configure an output option for PostScript. For details, refer to the PostScript guide.
[TrueType Font Download Option]	[Automatic], [Outline], [Bitmap], [Native TrueType]	Set an download option for a TrueType font.
[PostScript Language Level]	1 - 3	Set a PostScript language level.
[Send PostScript Error Handler]	[Yes], [No]	Set whether to send a PostScript error handler or not.
[Mirrored Output]	[Yes], [No]	Set [Mirrored Output].
[Negative Output]	[Yes], [No]	Set [Negative Output].
[Offset]	[Off], [On]	Stagger after each set of copies specified.
[Image Position]	[Off], [Top], [Center], [Bottom]	Specify the print position.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Weight]	No Setting, 40-49g/m <sup>2</sup> 50-61g/m <sup>2</sup> 62-74g/m <sup>2</sup> 75-91g/m <sup>2</sup> 92-135g/m <sup>2</sup> 136-162g/m <sup>2</sup> 163-216g/m <sup>2</sup> 217-244g/m <sup>2</sup> 245-300g/m <sup>2</sup> 301-350g/m <sup>2</sup>  (In case of the "Unit for Paper Weight" is g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Set weight of output paper.
[Paper Color]	[No Setting], [White], [Clear], [Yellow], [Pink], [Blue], [Green]	Specify color of output paper.
[Pre-Punched]	[Off], [On]	Select this check box to print on pre-punched paper.
[Output Tray]	[Auto] [Stapler Main Tray] [Stapler Sub Tray] [Stacker Auto] [Stacker 1 Main Tray] [Stacker 1 Sub Tray] [Stacker 2 Main Tray] [Stacker 2 Sub Tray] [Stacker 3 Main Tray] [Stacker 3 Sub Tray] [Saddle-Stitcher Sub Tray] [Multi Folder Main Tray] [Multi Folder Sub Tray] [Perfect Binder Sub Tray]	Select an output tray.
[Output Order]	[Face Down], [Face Up]	Set this to output printed paper with its face up.
[N to 1]	[Off], [On]	Set this to print an original in a reverse order.
[Pile Permission]	[Off], [On]	When another printed document remains in Stacker, gives the permission to stack the output. Setting the Pile Permission to OFF allows no pile on the stacker.
[Binding Position]	[Left Bind], [Top Bind], [Right Bind], [Left Bind], [Top Bind], [Right Bind]	Set a position to bind when using a function such as [Staple] and [Punch].
[2-Sided]	[Off], [On]	Select whether to print in 2-sided mode.
[Imposition]	[Off], [Booklet], [Adhesive Binding], [2 in 1], [Repeat], [2 Repeat Reversal (Left)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Right)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Top)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Bottom)]	Set this to perform an imposition printing.
[Staple]	[Off], [Left Corner], [Right Corner], [2 Positions (Wide)], [2 Positions (Narrow)], [2 Positions (Narrow+)]	Set this to staple paper.
[Punch]	[Off], [2-Hole], [3-Hole], [4-Hole], [Multi Punch]	Set this to punch paper.
[Perfect Binding Settings]	[Cover Blank] [Cover Print 1in1] [Cover Print 2in1], [Cover Print 3in1]	Set this when using a perfect binder function. For detail, refer to page 12-13.
[Perfect Binding Cover Tray]	Tray 1-8 PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3 PB Cover Tray	You can set a cover tray for a perfect binder.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Perfect Binding Cover Duplex]	[Off], [On]	Set this when setting a duplex cover for a perfect binder.
[Perfect Binding Cover Trim]	[Off], [On]	Set this when trimming a cover for a perfect binder.
[Fold]	[Off] [Z-Fold (A3/B4/Tabloid/8K)] [Z-Fold (Legal)] [Fold and Staple] [Fold and Staple + Trim] [Tri-Fold-In - Inside] [Tri-Fold-In - Outside] [Tri-Fold-Out - Outside] [Tri-Fold-Out - Inside] [Double Parallel-Fold - Inside] [Double Parallel-Fold - Outside] [Gate-Fold - Inside] [Gate-Fold - Outside] [Multi Tri-Fold - Inside] [Multi Tri-Fold - Outside] [Multi Half-Fold] [Multi Half-Fold + Trim]	Set the fold function.
[Image Shift]	[Off], [On]	Specify the position of printing image.
[Front Cover]	[Off], [Print], [Blank]	Set this to add the front cover.
[Front Cover Tray]	Off, Tray 1 - 8	Specify a tray for a front cover.
[Back Cover]	[Off], [Print], [Blank]	Set this to add a back cover.
[Back Cover Tray]	Off, Tray 1 - 8	Specify a tray for a back cover.
[PI Front Cover Tray]	Off, PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3	Set this to print a front cover on paper that is different with the output paper, such as thick paper.
[PI Back Cover Tray]	Off, PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3	Set this to print a back cover on paper that is different with the output paper, such as thick paper.
[Print Mode]	[Print] [Wait Mode] [Proof Print] [Proof Print (1st sheet)] [Hold Print]	<p>Select a print method.</p> <p>[Print]: The print job is printed without it being stored in a hard disk.</p> <p>[Proof Print]: You can print one copy to check the output.</p> <p>[Proof Print (1st sheet)]: You can print the first page to check the output.</p> <p>[Wait Mode]: You can pause the printing job to checks current setting from the control panel on this machine.</p> <p>[Hold Print]: You can store the print job temporarily as a hold job. Use this when you want to print at once at night.</p> <p>[Secure Print]: You can not output until you input the Secure Print ID and password on the control panel on this machine. Select this to print a confidential document for protection.</p>

Function Name	Option	Description
[Smoothing]	[Off], [Type 1], [Type 2], [Type 3]	Select this check box to set smoothing. [Smoothing] is available only when [600 dpi] and Thinning are selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Type 1]: Performs processing appropriate for diagonal lines in general text and diagram.</li> <li>[Type 2]: Performs processing appropriate for curves in general text.</li> <li>[Type 3]: Performs processing appropriate for curves in dingbat and small letters</li> </ul>
[Fine line Precision]	[Off] [Level 1] [Level 2] [Level 3] [Level 4]	When you print small letters, printing result might become illegible depending on the contents of the original documents. In this case, setting [Fine line Precision] enables to read small letters. The higher you set the level, the line becomes thinner.
[Object]	[Text ] [All-image]	Specify the target when the [Fine line Precision] is set.
[Date/Time]	[Off], [All Pages], [1st Page Only]	Set this when printing date/time.
[Copy Protect]	[Off], [On]	Set this to combines the selected document with the copy protect pattern to protect from unauthorized copying
[Preset Stamp]	[Off], [Copy], [Invalid], [Illegal Copy], [Invalid Copy]	Select the background pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect].
[Back Pattern]	[Off], [Cherry Blossoms], [Arabesque], [Lattice]	Select the background pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect].
[Image Density Selection]	[+1], [Standard] [-5] to [-1] [Toner Save], [Draft Print]	Adjust the print density. Move the slider toward plus to deepen the density and move the slider toward minus to lighten the density. [Draft Print] corresponds with [Image Density Selection] - [-2] and [Toner Save] corresponds with [Image Density Selection] - [-4].
[180° Rotate]	[Off], [On]	Set this to rotate the document 180 degree and print.
[Tandem Mode]	[Off], [On]	Set this to output from two printers using the tandem connection.
[Ring Binding]	[Off], [On]	Set this to bind the output using ring-shaped binder.
[Printed Side for Top Sheet]	[Outside], [Inside]	Specify the printed side of the top sheet when the [Ring Binding] is specified. [Inside] : Prints document on inside of the top sheet. [Outside] : Prints document on outside of the top sheet.
[Printed Side for Last Sheet]	[Inside], [Outside]	Specify the printed side of the last sheet when the [Ring Binding] is specified. [Inside]: Prints document on inside of the last sheet. [Outside]: Prints document on outside of the last sheet.

## Reference

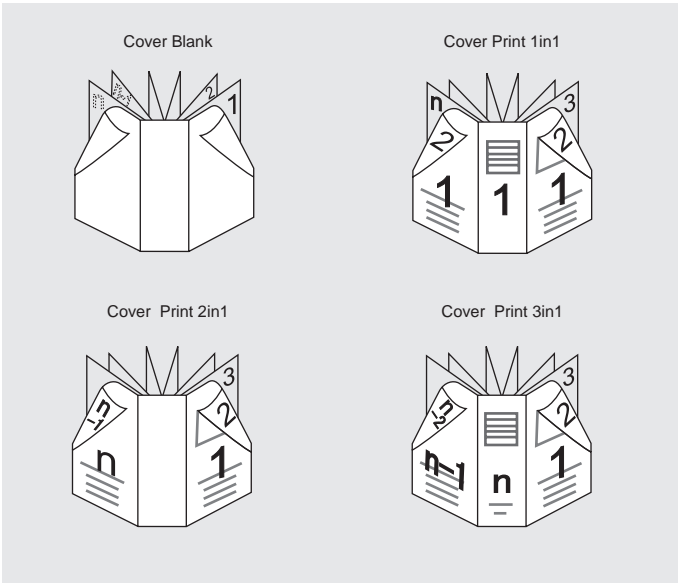
- The [Staple] function is available only when an optional [Staple Finisher] is installed.
- The details of [Staple 2positions] are as follows:
  - Wide.....about 165mm
  - Narrow.....about 140mm
  - Narrow+....about 120mm
- The [Punch] function is available only when an optional [Punch Z-Fold Unit] or [Multi Hole Punch Unit] is installed.
- The [Ring Binding] function is available only when an optional [Ring Binder] is installed.
- The [Fold] function is available only when an optional [Saddle Unit] or [Punch Z-Fold Unit] is installed.

**Reference**

*For details on the paper sizes loadable in the paper trays, refer to "User's Guide (Copier)".*

Perfect Binding Mode

Perfect Binding mode has the following 4 types:



Function Name	Description
[Cover Blank]	Cover wraps the body of document without being printed.
[Cover Print 1in1]	This is used when arrangements are made in advance for the originals the front cover, the back cover and the spine of which have been cut and pasted to the same size as the paper used as the front cover.
[Cover Print 2in1]	For the front cover, the first page and the last page (n page) of the originals are made as 2in1, and the second page up to the last page but one (n - 1 page) are printed as the body of documents with no printing made on the spine for perfect binding.
[Cover Print 3in1]	After cutting and pasting automatically the first page of the original on the front cover, the last page but one (n - 1 page) on the back cover, and the last page (n page) on 3in1 as the spine, the front cover is printed. And the second page up to the last page but two (n - 2 page) are printed as the body of documents.



---

# 13

**Print functions of PPD driver  
for Mac OS X**

## 13 Print functions of PPD driver for Mac OS X

This chapter describes the functions of the PPD printer driver for OS X.

### 13.1 Default settings of the printer driver

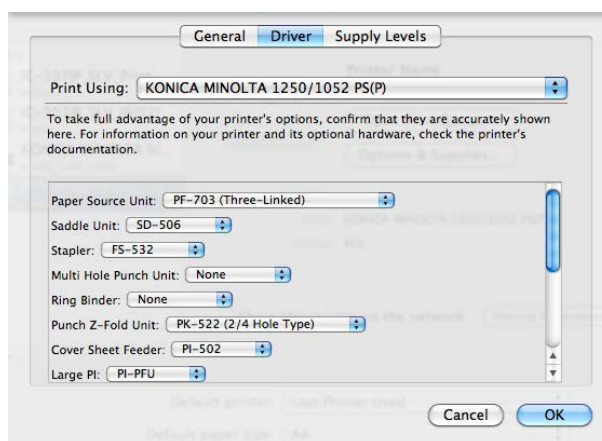
After installing the printer driver, you have to change the default settings including an optional device before printing so that the printer driver can use the functionality of the machine.

#### NOTICE

*Any options that are installed in this machine but not configured in the [Printer Info] cannot be used in the Printing Preferences screen of the printer driver. Be sure to set the optional device if there is any.*

#### 13.1.1 Option Settings

- 1 Open the [Print & Fax] (or [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center]) window.
  - The [Print & Fax] window can be opened from [System Preferences...] in [Apple Menu] (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6).
  - The [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center] window can be opened from [Macintosh HD] - [Applications] - [Utilities].
- 2 Open the [Printer Info] window.
  - In case of [Print & Fax] window, click the [Options & Supplies] (OS X 10.5/10.6), [Printer Setup] (OS X 10.4).
  - In case of the [Printer Setup Utility]/[Print Center], select [Printer] - [Printer Info] menu.
- 3 Open the [Installable Option] window.
  - For OS X 10.5/10.6, click [Driver].
  - For OS X 10.4, click [Installable Option].
- 4 Configure the optional devices installed on this machine.



- 5 Click [OK] or [Apply] and then close [Printer Info] window.

#### Reference

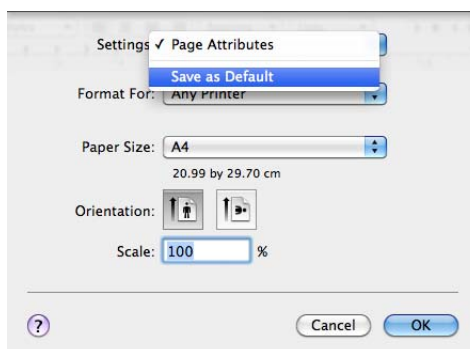
- Be sure to select the optional device.
- When the [Secure Print Only] is enabled, you can print only secure print job. For details on the Secure Print refer to page 14-4.

### 13.1.2 Registering the default settings

The settings for the machine functions configured when printing can only be applied while using the application. When you exit the application, the settings return to their default settings.

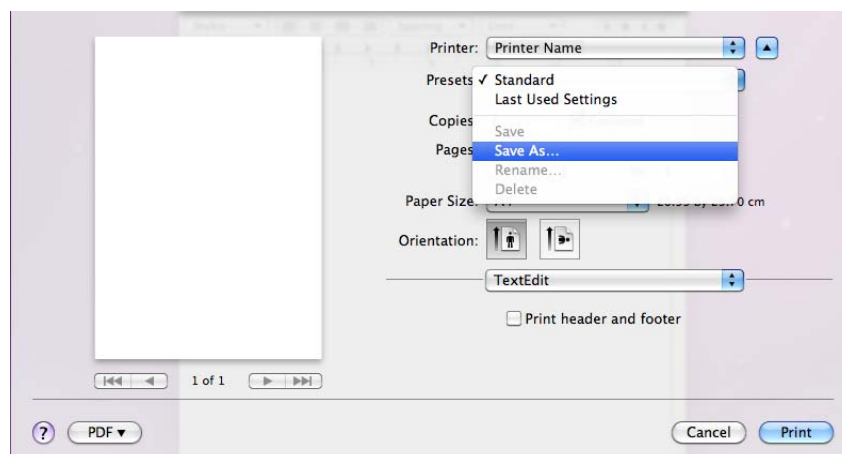
To register the settings, save the printer driver settings. For OS X, you can register the paper settings as the default settings, but it is necessary to save the other print functions using the [Presets] pop-up menu so that you can retrieve the functions when you want use.

You can save the settings of the [Page Setup] window by selecting [Save as Default] from [Settings] pop-up menu.



Selecting [Save as] on the [Presets] pop-up menu enables you to save the settings you configured in the [Print] window.

When you use this settings, select it from [Presets] pop-up menu.



#### Reference

- The list of the [Per Page Setting] can not be saved.



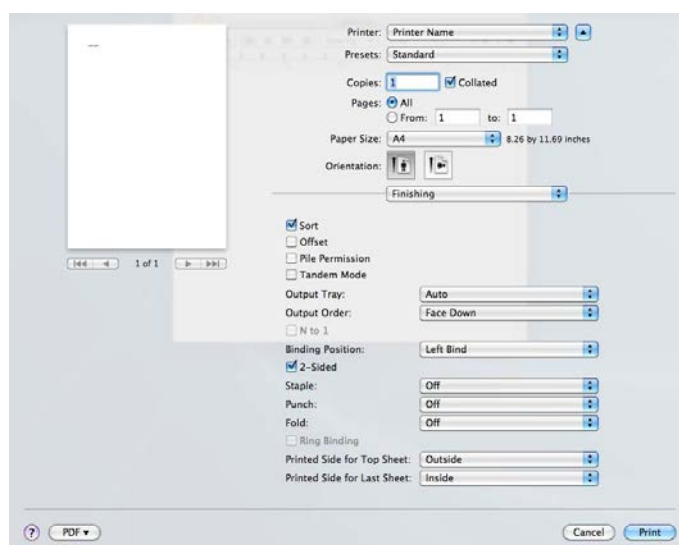
#### Reference

For details on the function and settings of the printer driver, refer to page 13-6.

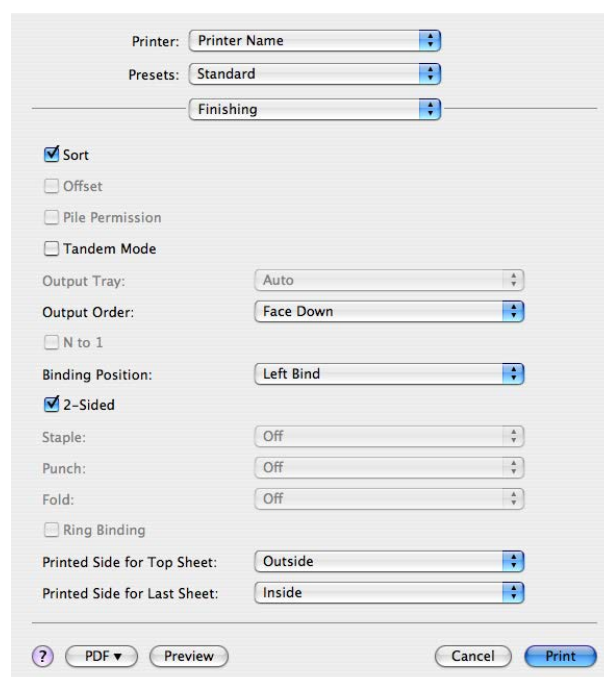
## 13.2 Common Setting

This section describes about the common setting items displayed on the unique functions of this machine specified in [Print] window.

OS X 10.5/10.6 :



OS X 10.4 :



Item Name	Function
[Cancel]	Click this button to disable (cancel) changed settings and close the properties window.
[Print]	Click this button to enable changed settings and print.

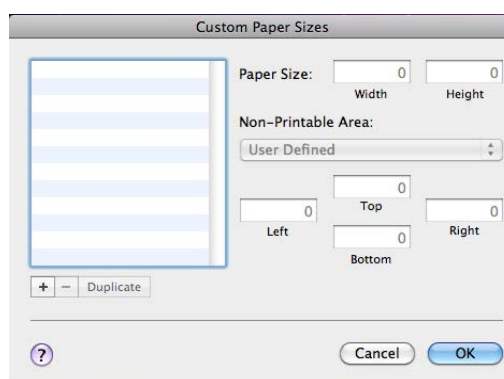
### Reference

- The [Acquire Device Information] on the Printer Information dialog box communicates with this machine to acquire the settings of this machine. The function cannot be used unless you are connected and able to communicate with this machine.

## 13.3 Adding the Custom Size

You can register the custom paper size other than standard paper size, if you need.

- 1 Select [File] - [Page Setup] menu.
- 2 Open the Add Custom Size screen.
  - For OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6, select the [Manage Custom Size] from the paper size list.
- 3 Click [+].
- 4 Enter the paper name.
  - You can not specify the present standard paper name such as A4 or Custom.
- 5 Set each items.
  - Page Size (Paper Size) : Specify the paper size that you want to use.
  - Printer margin : Sets the margins of the output paper.



- 6 Click [OK].
  - The custom paper size is registered and then you can select it from the Paper Size on the [Page Attributes].

### Reference

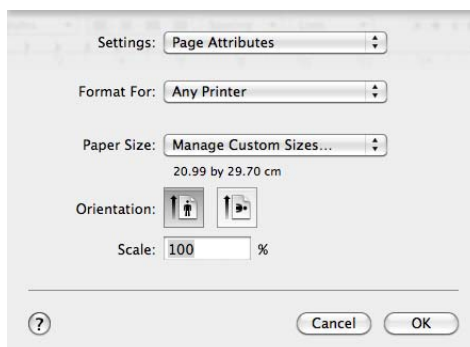
- For OS X 10.5/10.6, you can also select [Manage Custom Size] from the [Paper Size] on the [Print] window.

## 13.4 Parameter details

The function of the printer driver can be set in [Page Attributes] selected from [Page Setup] screen and [Output Method], [Layout/Finishing], [Paper Tray/Output Tray], [Cover Sheet/OHP Inserts], [Per Page Settings], [Stamp/Page Printing], and [Image Quality] selected from [Print] window.

### 13.4.1 [Page Attributes]

Select [File] - [Page Setup] menu.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Size]	The available paper sizes registered as the standard paper sizes and custom sizes	Set a paper size to print.
	Manage Custom Size (OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6)	
[Orientation]	Portrait, Landscape	Select the orientation for the original.
[Scale]	— (According to the OS X version, it varies)	Select an enlarge or reduce ratio.

#### Reference

- The paper size of [12×18] is 304.8×457.2 that is slightly larger than A3.
- You can register the custom paper size other than standard paper size, if you need. For details on adding custom paper size, refer to page 13-5.
- To print data corresponding to the full area of the standard paper, select "W" of each standard paper. It enables to print the image centering on the sheet that is larger than the original. For example, when you print the A4 size data centered on the A3 paper, create the data with "A4W" paper size settings and select [A4W] in [Paper Size] and [Paper Tray] to use. For the machine, set A3 paper into the tray to use and select the tray to use on [Basic Settings (Paper)] screen. Then select the [Change Set] - [Wide Paper] - [A4W]. Confirm that [Auto Detect] in [Selected Size] is specified and A3 is displayed. When 12 1/4 × 18 is set, from [Selected Size] you need to select [12 1/4×18]. When the paper to print is the custom paper size, use the bypass tray and select [Change Set] - [Wide Paper] - [A4W]. Then enter the paper size to use in [Change Size].
- For OS X 10.5/10.6, you can also specify [Paper Size] and [Orientation] on the Print window.

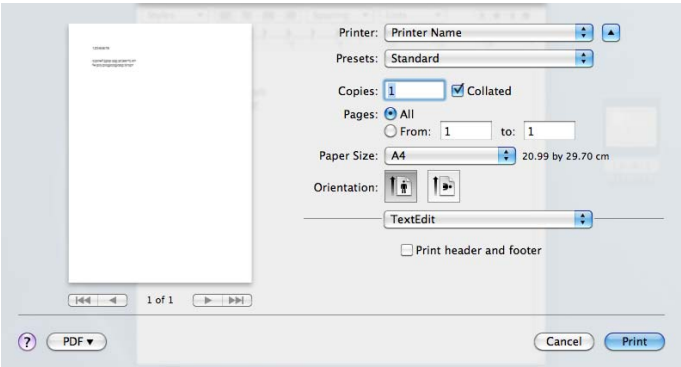


#### Reference

For details on the paper sizes loadable in the paper trays, refer to [User's Guide - Copier].


13.4.2 [Copies & Pages]

Select [File] - [Print] menu.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Copies]	1 - 9999	Specify the number of copies to print.
[Collated]	ON/OFF	Do not specify this function. Use [Collate] in the [Output Method].
[Page]	—	You can specify the print range.

Reference

- For OS X 10.5, [Paper Size] and [Orientation] are also displayed. These are same functions with those on [Page Attributes].
- When the setting items are not displayed in OS X 10.5, click  on the right side of [Printer].

## 13.4.3 [Finishing]

Function Name	Option	Description
[Sort]	ON/OFF	Select this check box to collate pages sequentially when printing multiple sets of copies.
[Offset]	ON/OFF	You can stagger the output slightly by one copy when you output multiple copies.
[Pile Permission]	Off, On	When another printed document remains in Stacker, gives the permission to stack the output. Setting the Pile Permission to OFF allows no pile on the stacker.
[Tandem Mode]	[Off], [On]	Set this to output from two printers using the tandem connection.
[Output Tray]	[Auto] [Stapler Main Tray] [Stapler Sub Tray] [Stacker Auto] [Stacker 1 Main Tray] [Stacker 1 Sub Tray] [Stacker 2 Main Tray] [Stacker 2 Sub Tray] [Stacker 3 Main Tray] [Stacker 3 Sub Tray] [Saddle-Stitcher Sub Tray] [Multi Folder Main Tray] [Multi Folder Sub Tray] [Perfect Binder Sub Tray]	Select an output tray.
[Output Order]	[Face Down], [Face Up]	Set this to output printed paper with its face up.
[N to 1]	[Off], [On]	Set this to print an original in a reverse order.
[Binding Position]	[Left Bind], [Top Bind], [Right Bind], [Left Bind], [Top Bind], [Right Bind]	Set a position to bind when using a function such as [Staple] and [Punch].
[2-Sided]	[Off], [On]	Select whether to print in 2-sided mode.
[Staple]	[Off], [Left Corner], [Right Corner], [2 Positions (Wide)], [2 Positions (Narrow)], [2 Positions (Narrow+)]	Set this to staple paper.
[Punch]	[Off], [2-Hole], [3-Hole], [4-Hole], [Multi Punch]	Set this to punch paper.



Function Name	Option	Description
[Fold]	[Off] [Z-Fold (A3/B4/Tabloid/8K)] [Z-Fold (Legal)] [Fold and Staple] [Fold and Staple + Trim] [Tri-Fold-In - Inside] [Tri-Fold-In - Outside] [Tri-Fold-Out - Outside] [Tri-Fold-Out - Inside] [Double Parallel-Fold - Inside] [Double Parallel-Fold - Outside] [Gate-Fold - Inside] [Gate-Fold - Outside] [Multi Tri-Fold - Inside] [Multi Tri-Fold - Outside] [Multi Half-Fold] [Multi Half-Fold + Trim]	Set the fold function.
[Ring Binding]	[Off], [On]	Set this to bind the output using ring-shaped binder.
[Printed Side for Top Sheet]	[Outside], [Inside]	Specify the printed side of the top sheet when the [Ring Binding] is specified. [Inside] : Prints document on inside of the top sheet. [Outside] : Prints document on outside of the top sheet.
[Printed Side for Last Sheet]	[Inside], [Outside]	Specify the printed side of the last sheet when the [Ring Binding] is specified. [Inside]: Prints document on inside of the last sheet. [Outside]: Prints document on outside of the last sheet.

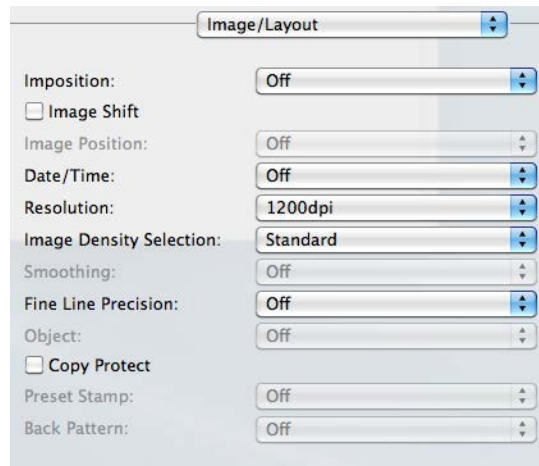
## Reference

- The [Staple] function is available only when an optional [Staple Finisher] is installed.
- The details of [Staple 2positions] are as follows:
  - Wide.....about 165mm
  - Narrow.....about 140mm
  - Narrow+....about 120mm
- The [Punch] function is available only when an optional [Punch Z-Fold Unit] or [Multi Hole Punch Unit] is installed.
- The [Ring Binding] function is available only when an optional [Ring Binder] is installed.
- The [Fold] function is available only when an optional [Saddle Unit] or [Punch Z-Fold Unit] is installed.

**Reference**

*For details on the paper sizes loadable in the paper trays, refer to "User's Guide (Copier)".*

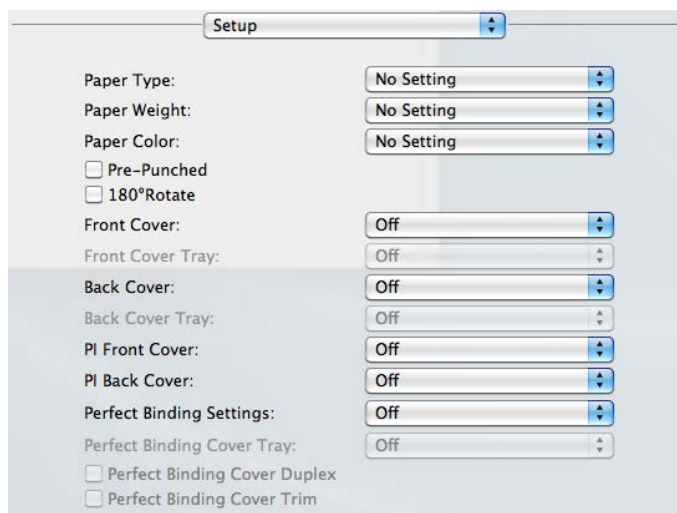
## 13.4.4 [Image/Layout]



Function Name	Option	Description
[Imposition]	[Off], [Booklet], [Adhesive Binding], [2 in 1], [Repeat], [2 Repeat Reversal (Left)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Right)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Top)], [2 Repeat Reversal (Bottom)]	Set this to perform an imposition printing.
[Image Shift]	Off, On	Specify the position of printing image.
[Image Pos.]	[Off], [Top], [Center], [Bottom]	Specify the print position.
[Date/Time]	[Off], [All Pages], [1st Page Only]	Set this when printing date/time.
[Resolution]	[600dpi], [1200dpi]	Select a resolution.
[Image Density]	[+1], [Standard] [-5] - [-1] [Toner Save], [Draft Print]	Adjust the print density. Move the slider toward plus to deepen the density and move the slider toward minus to lighten the density. [Draft Print] corresponds with [Image Density] - [-2] and [Toner Save] corresponds with [Image Density] - [-4].
[Smoothing]	[Off], [Type 1], [Type 2], [Type 3]	Select this check box to set smoothing. [Smoothing] is available only when [600 dpi] and Thinning are selected. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>[Type 1]: Performs processing appropriate for diagonal lines in general text and diagram.</li> <li>[Type 2]: Performs processing appropriate for curves in general text.</li> <li>[Type 3]: Performs processing appropriate for curves in dingbat and small letters</li> </ul>
[Fine line Precision]	[Off] [Level 1] [Level 2] [Level 3] [Level 4]	When you print small letters, printing result might become illegible depending on the contents of the original documents. In this case, setting [Fine line Precision] enables to read small letters. The higher you set the level, the line becomes thinner.
[Object]	[Text] [All-image]	Specify the target when the [Fine line Precision] is set.
[Copy Protect]	Off, On	Set this to combines the selected document with the copy protect pattern to protect from unauthorized copying
[Preset Stamp]	[Off], [Copy], [Invalid], [Illegal Copy], [Invalid Copy]	Select the background pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect].

Function Name	Option	Description
[Back Pattern]	[Off], [Cherry Blossoms], [Arabesque], [Lattice]	Select the background pattern that is used on settings for the [Copy Protect].

### 13.4.5 [Setup]

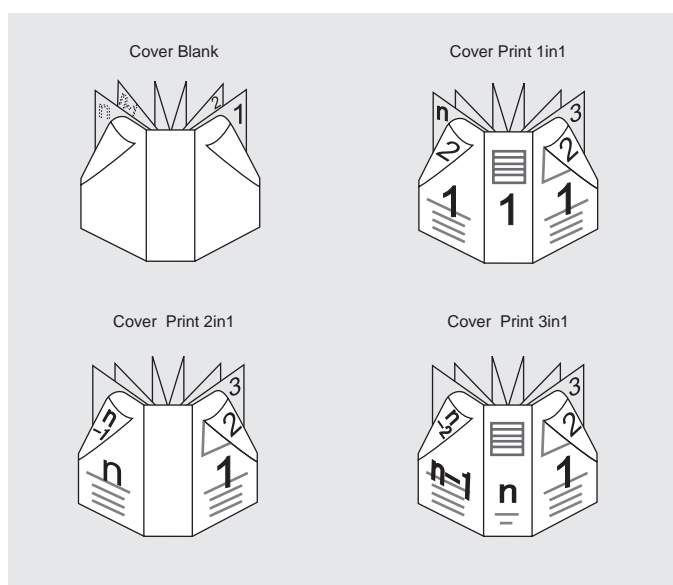


Function Name	Option	Description
[Paper Type]	[No Setting], [Plain Paper], [Coated], [PrePrinted], [Fine], [Book/News], [Embossed], [Blank Insert], [Envelope], [Embossed2]	Specify a paper type. To use the Envelope, it is necessary that the Envelope Fusing Unit (EF-102) option is installed.
[Weight]	No Setting, 40-49g/m <sup>2</sup> 50-61g/m <sup>2</sup> 62-74g/m <sup>2</sup> 75-91g/m <sup>2</sup> 92-135g/m <sup>2</sup> 136-162g/m <sup>2</sup> 163-216g/m <sup>2</sup> 217-244g/m <sup>2</sup> 245-300g/m <sup>2</sup> 301-350g/m <sup>2</sup>  (In case of the "Unit for Paper Weight" is g/m <sup>2</sup> )	Set weight of output paper.
[Color]	[No Setting], [White], [Clear], [Yellow], [Pink], [Blue], [Green]	Specify color of output paper.
[Pre-Punched]	Off, On	Select this check box to print on pre-punched paper.
[180° Rotate]	Off, On	Set this to rotate the document 180 degree and print.
[Front Cover]	[Off], [Print], [Blank]	Set this to add the front cover.
[Front Cover Tray]	Off, Tray 1 - 8	Specify a tray for a front cover.
[Back Cover]	[Off], [Print], [Blank]	Set this to add a back cover.
[Back Cover Tray]	Off, Tray 1 - 8	Specify a tray for a back cover.
[PI Front Cover Tray]	Off, PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3	Set this to print a front cover on paper that is different with the output paper, such as thick paper.
[PI Back Cover Tray]	Off, PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3	Set this to print a back cover on paper that is different with the output paper, such as thick paper.

Function Name	Option	Description
[Perfect Binding Settings]	[Cover Blank] [Cover Print 1in1] [Cover Print 2in1], [Cover Print 3in1]	Set this when using a perfect binder function. For detail, refer to page 13-13.
[Perfect Binding Cover Tray]	Tray 1-8 PI Tray 1-2 PI-PFU Tray 1-3 PB Cover Tray	You can set a cover tray for a perfect binder.
[Perfect Binding Cover Duplex]	Off, On	Set this when setting a duplex cover for a perfect binder.
[Perfect Binding Cover Trim]	Off, On	Set this when trimming a cover for a perfect binder.

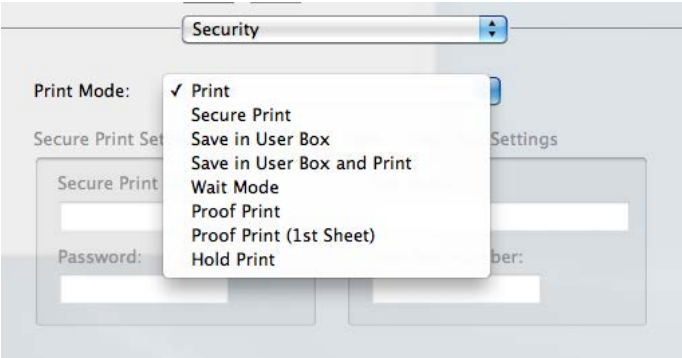
## Perfect Binding Mode

Perfect Binding mode has the following 4 types:



Function Name	Description
[Cover Blank]	Cover wraps the body of document without being printed.
[Cover Print 1in1]	This is used when arrangements are made in advance for the originals the front cover, the back cover and the spine of which have been cut and pasted to the same size as the paper used as the front cover.
[Cover Print 2in1]	For the front cover, the first page and the last page (n page) of the originals are made as 2in1, and the second page up to the last page but one (n - 1 page) are printed as the body of documents with no printing made on the spine for perfect binding.
[Cover Print 3in1]	After cutting and pasting automatically the first page of the original on the front cover, the last page but one (n - 1 page) on the back cover, and the last page (n page) on 3in1 as the spine, the front cover is printed. And the second page up to the last page but two (n - 2 page) are printed as the body of documents.

13.4.6 [Secure Print]



Function Name	Option	Description
[Print Mode]	[Print]	Select a print method.
	[Secure Print]	[Print]:
	[Save in User Box]	The print job is printed without it being stored in a hard disk.
	[Save in User Box and Print]	
	[Wait Mode]	[Secure Print]:
	[Proof Print]	You can not output until you input the Secure Print ID and password on the control panel on this machine.
	[Proof Print (1st sheet)]	Select this to print a confidential documents for protection.
	[Hold Print]	For details on this procedures, refer to page 14-4.
		[Save in User Box]:
		The print job is stored in the hard disk in the main body.
		Specify the box number and file name to store in the hard disk.
		For details on this procedures, refer to page 14-7.
		[Save in User Box and Print]:
		The print job is stored in the hard disk in the main body and then printed. Specify the box number and file name to store in the hard disk.
		For details, refer to page 14-7.
		[Wait Mode]:
		You can pause the printing job to checks current setting from the control panel on this machine.
		[Proof Print]:
		You can print one copy to check the output.
		[Proof Print (1st sheet)] :
		You can print the first page to check the output.
		[Hold Print]:
		You can store the print job temporarily as a hold job.
		Use this when you want to print at once at night.

---

# 14

## Function Details

## 14 Function Details

This chapter describes the functions that require special attention, for example, when combining the printer driver and panel operation of the machine.

### 14.1 Secure Print

The Secure Print is suitable to print confidential document because it stores the printing job in this machine and allows printing after inputting the Secure Print ID and password on the control panel on this machine.

The Secure Print function can be specified using the printer driver when printing, and printing can be performed from the control panel.

In order to prevent information leakage, you can restrict the printings done on this machine only to the secure printing.

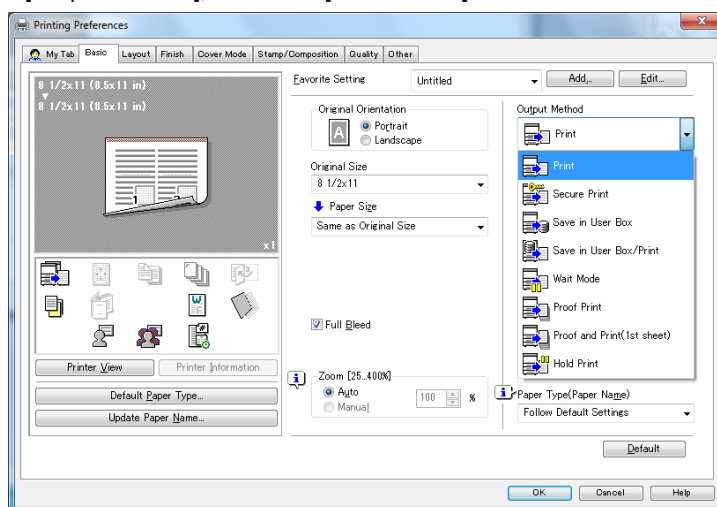
#### 14.1.1 Printer Driver Settings (PCL driver/PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver (Mac OS X))

##### PCL Driver :

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

- ✓ Selecting the [Secure Print] from the [Output Method] on the [Basic] tab

- 1 Open the [Basic] tab.
- 2 From the [Output Method], select the [Secure Print].



- It uses the screens from Windows 7 in the description.
- When the [Fix Secure Print] is enabled on the [Secure Print Settings], output method is fixed to [Secure Print]. For details on the [Secure Print Settings], refer to page 10-4.



- 3 Enter the [Secure Print ID] and [password] and click [OK].

- When [Password Rules] is enabled on the machine, the passwords that can be used for secure printing are limited. If a password that does not comply with the password rules is entered, the job is deleted. For details on the [Password Rules], refer to "User's Guide (Copier)".
- When the [Popup the User Settings dialog at Secure Print] is enabled on the [Secure Print Settings], you can not enter password. Enter the password when printing. The secure print ID can be entered. For details on the [Secure Print Settings], refer to page 10-4.

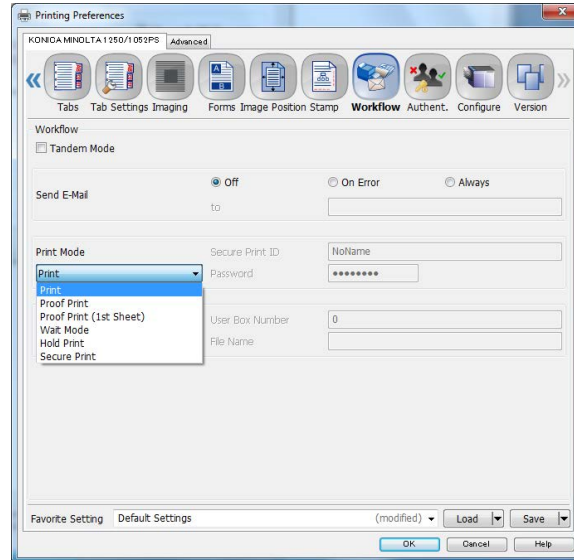
- 4 Click [OK] to start printing.

- When the [Popup the User Settings dialog at Secure Print] is enabled on the [Secure Print Settings], you can enter the secure print ID and password.

## PS Plug-in Driver

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

- ✓ Selecting the [Secure Print] from the [Print Mode] on the [Workflow] tab.
- 1 Display the [WorkFlow] tab.
- 2 Select the [Secure Print] from the [Print Mode].



→ It uses the screens from Windows 7 in the description.

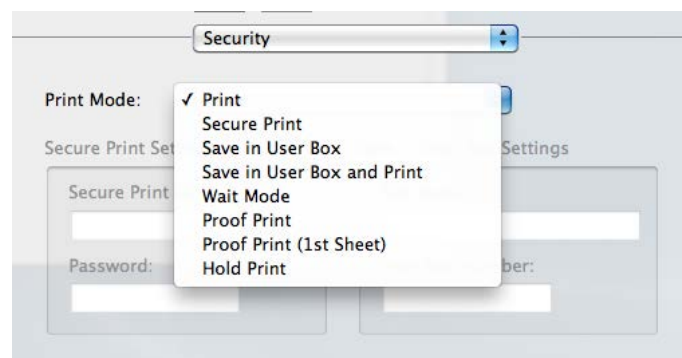
- 3 Enter the [Secure Print ID] and [password] and then reenter the password for confirmation in [Reenter].
  - The default value of the [Secure Print ID] is "NoName".
  - Enter the password with 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters.
  - When [Password Rules] is enabled on the machine, the passwords that can be used for secure printing are limited. If a password that does not comply with the password rules is entered, the job is deleted. For details on the [Password Rules], refer to [User's Guide (Copier)].
- 4 Click [OK] to start printing.

## PPD Driver (Mac OS X)

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

- ✓ Selecting the [Secure Print] from the [Print Mode] on the [Security] window

- 1 Select the [Security].
- 2 Select the [Secure Print] from the [Print Mode].



- 3 Enter the [Secure Print ID] and [Password].
  - Enter the password with 1 to 8 alphanumeric characters.

- When [Password Rules] is enabled on the machine, the passwords that can be used for secure printing are limited. If a password that does not comply with the password rules is entered, the job is deleted. For details on the [Password Rules], refer to "User's Guide (Copier)".

### 14.1.2 Calling a job from the control panel

The job to be output using the [Security Print] function is stored to the [Secure Folder] on the [RECALL] tab.



#### Reference

For details on the functions of the keys on the control panel, refer to "User's Guide (Copier)".

### Print from the Secure Folder

- 1 Press [RECALL] and then press [Secure Folder] on the touch panel of the machine.



- 2 Select a User box (ID), enter the [password] and then press[OK].
- 3 Select the file to print and press [Print].



- 4 Specify the number of copies to print, enter the page to print if necessary and then click [OK].



#### Reference

You can check the output settings before printing and combine the files to be printed.

For details, refer to "User's Guide (Network Scanner)".

## 14.2 Save in User Box

The Save in User Box function stores print job in the hard disk in the machine.

The Save in User Box function can be specified using the printer driver when printing.



### Reference

For details on the Save in User Box, refer to "User's Guide (Network Scanner)".

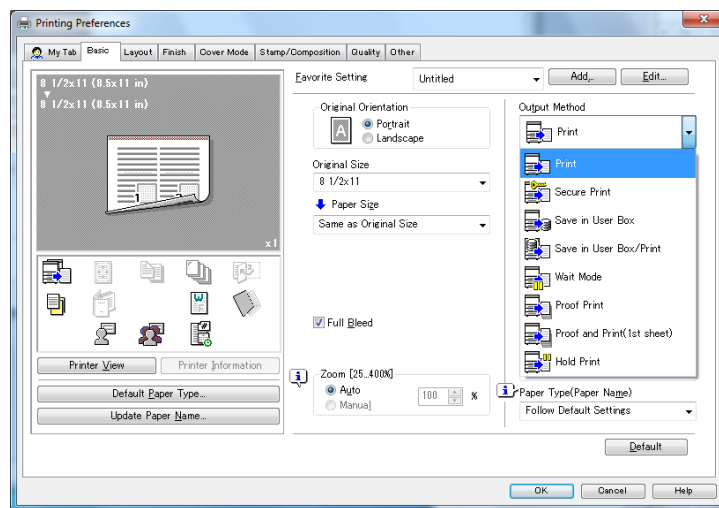
### 14.2.1 Printer Driver Settings (PCL driver/PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver (Mac OS X))

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

- Print Mode : [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box/Print]

#### PCL Driver

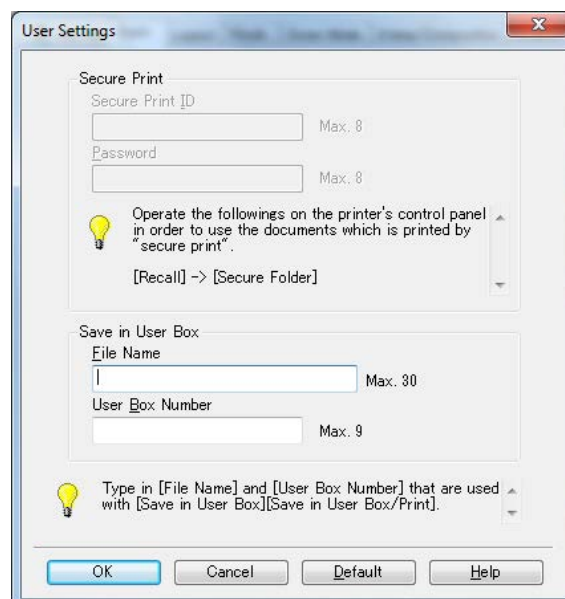
- 1 Open the [Basic] tab.
- 2 From the [Output Method], select the [Save in User Box] and [Save in User Box/Print].



→ It uses the screens from Windows 7 in the description.

→ To save in hard disk and print at the same time, select the [Save in User Box/Print].

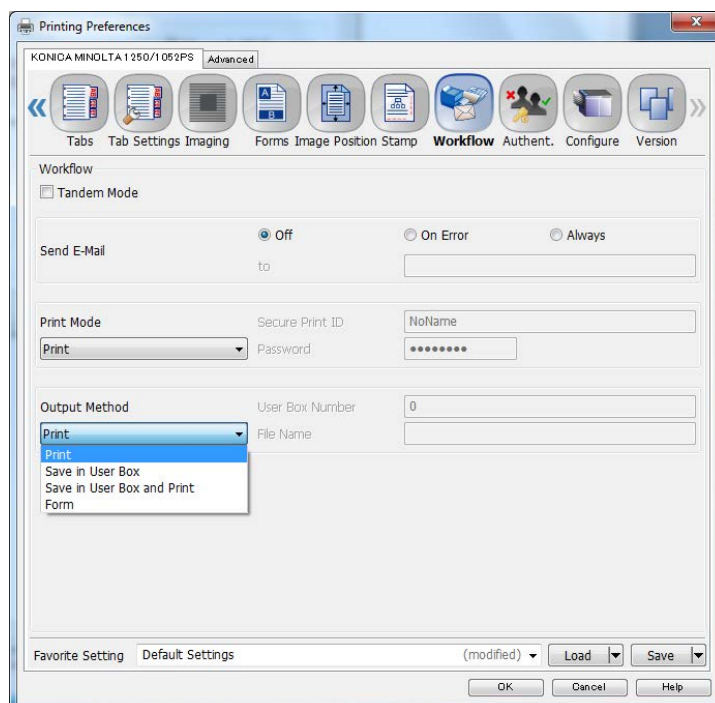
- 3 Enter the [File Name] and [User Box Number] and click [OK].



- 4 Click [OK] to start printing.

## PS Plug-in Driver

- 1 Display the [WorkFlow] tab.
- 2 From the [Output Method], select the [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box and Print].

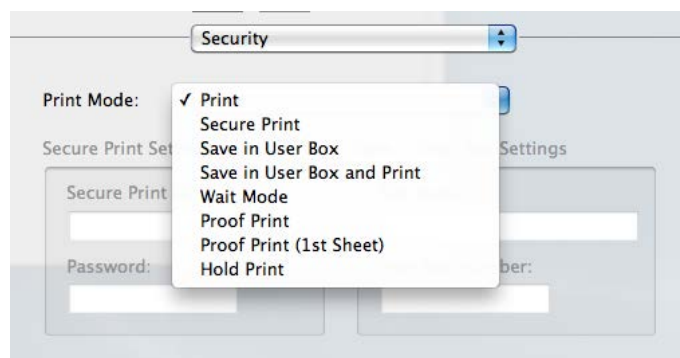


→ To save in hard disk and print at the same time, select the [Save in User Box and Print].

- 3 Enter the [User Box Number] and [File Name] and click OK.
- 4 Click [OK].

## PPD Driver (Mac OS X)

- 1 Select the [Security].
- 2 Select the [Save in User Box] or [Save in User Box and Print]] from the [Print Mode].



→ To save in hard disk and print at the same time, select the [Save in User Box and Print].

- 3 Enter the [File Name] and [User Box Number].
- 4 Click [Print].

### 14.2.2 Calling a job

You can call the stored job in the user box from the [RECALL] tab on the touch panel of the machine. (page 14-8)



#### Reference

For details on the functions of the keys on the control panel, refer to [User's Guide (Copier)].

### Print from [RECALL] tab

- 1 Press [RECALL] on the touch panel of the machine.
- 2 [Press Public Folder].



- 3 Select the file to print from box.



- 4 Select the corresponding folder.

#### Reference

- When the [User Box Number] is not registered on the printer driver in advance, a box is automatically generated. In this case, the two same numbers are registered side by side.  
Example: When you enter "12345" in [User Box Number] :  
"000012345 000012345".

- 5 Select the file to print and press [Print].
- 6 Specify the number of copies to print, enter the page to print if necessary and then click [OK].  
The document is printed.

**Reference**

*You can check the output settings before printing and combine the files to be printed.*

*For details, refer to "User's Guide (Network Scanner)".*

## 14.3 Proof Print/Wait Mode/Hold Print

You can check the current setting before printing or confirm the result of printing with test print.

Use this before printing a large volume document.

### 14.3.1 Printer Driver Settings (PCL driver/PS Plug-in driver/PPD driver (Mac OS X))

Perform printing with the following settings specified.

- Print Mode : [Proof Print], [Proof and Print (1st sheet)], [Wait Mode], or [Hold Print]

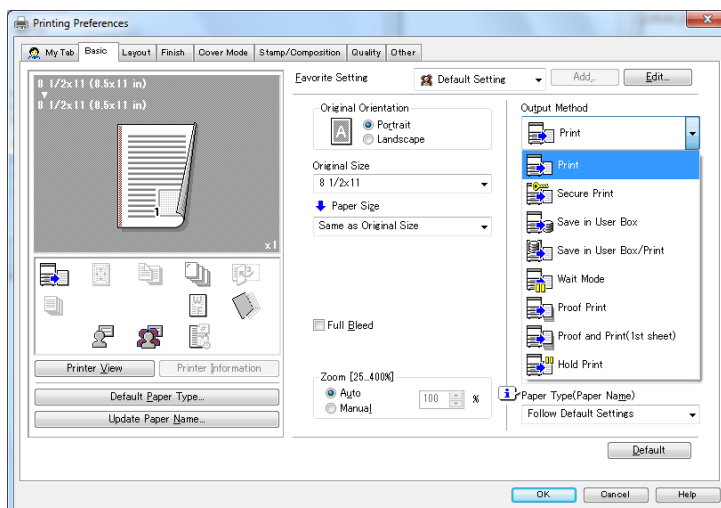


#### Reference

When you print selecting [Hold Print], the job is displayed in [Suspend] on the [JOB LIST]. For details, refer to the "User's Guide - Copier".

#### PCL Driver

- 1 Open the [Basic] tab.
- 2 From the [Wait Mode], select the [Proof Print], [Proof and Print (1st sheet)], [Wait Mode], or [Hold Print].



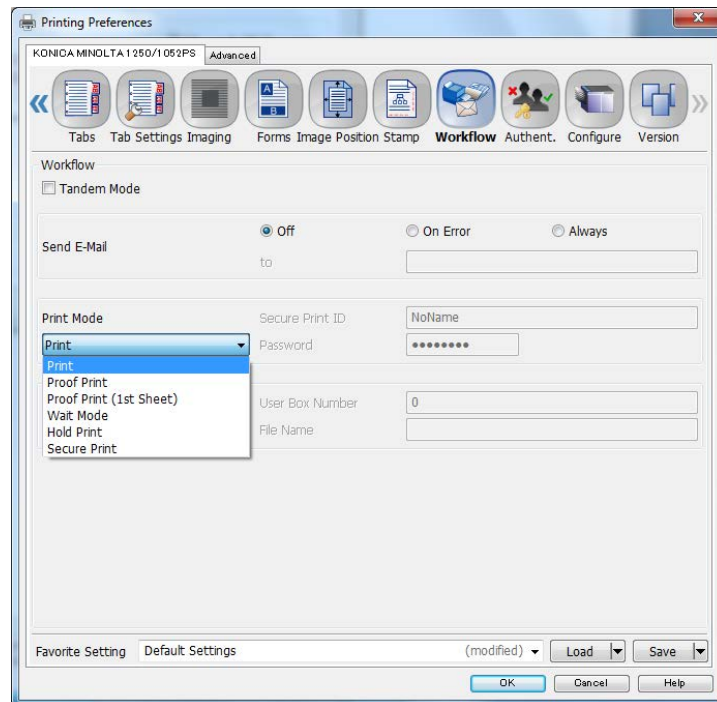
- To print one copy and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print].
- To print the first sheet and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof and Print (1st sheet)].
- To confirm the current settings on the touch panel of the machine before printing, select the [Wait Mode].
- To send once to printer as holding job, select the [Hold Print].

- 3 Click [OK] to start printing.



## PS Plug-in Driver

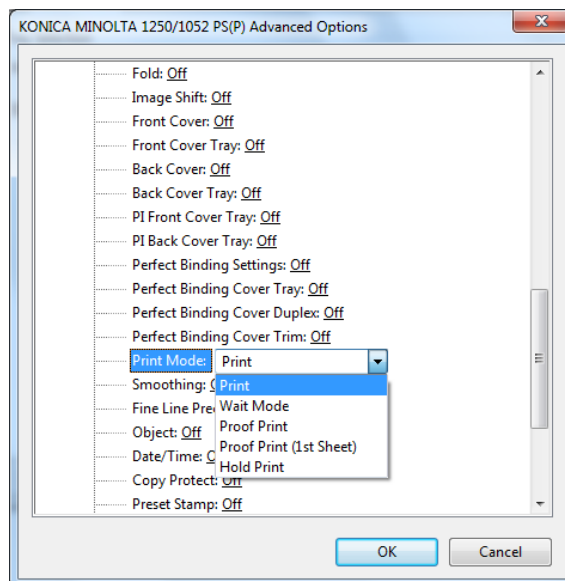
- 1 Display the [WorkFlow] tab.
- 2 From the [Print Mode], select the [Proof Print], [Proof Print (1st sheet)], [Wait Mode], or [Hold Print].



- To print one copy and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print].
  - To print the first sheet and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print (1st sheet)].
  - To confirm the current settings on the touch panel of the machine before printing, select the [Wait Mode].
  - To send once to printer as holding job, select the [Hold Print].
- 3 Click [OK] to start printing.

## PPD driver (Windows)

- 1 Display the [Advanced Options] window.
- 2 From the [Wait Mode], select the [Proof Print], [Proof Print (1st Sheet)], [Wait Mode], or [Hold Print].

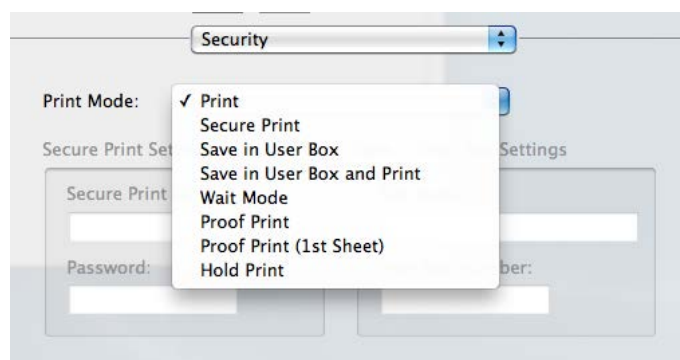


- To print one copy and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print].
- To print the first sheet and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print (1st sheet)].
- To confirm the current settings on the touch panel of the machine before printing, select the [Wait Mode].
- To send once to printer as holding job, select the [Hold Print].

- 3 Click [OK].
- 4 Click [OK] to start printing.

## PPD Driver (Mac OS X)

- 1 Select the [Security].
- 2 From the [Print Mode], select the [Wait Mode], [Proof Print], [Proof Print (1st sheet)], or [Hold Print].



- To confirm the current settings on the touch panel of the machine before printing, select the [Wait Mode].
- To print one copy and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print].
- To print the first sheet and confirm the current settings, select the [Proof Print (1st sheet)].
- To send once to printer as holding job, select the [Hold Print].

- 3 Click [Print].

### 14.3.2 Calling a job

#### Calling a job sent by Proof Print/Proof and Print (1st sheet)/Wait Mode

When the [Proof Print], [Proof and Print (1st sheet)], or [Hold Print] is specified, the machine is stopped temporarily and the Mode Check screen is displayed.

- When the [Proof Print] is specified, one copy is printed and the machine is stopped temporarily.
- When the [Proof and Print (1st sheet)] is specified, the first page is printed and the machine is stopped temporarily.
- When the [Wait Mode] is specified, the first page is printed and the machine is stopped temporarily.

#### Print from [RECALL] tab

- 1 Confirm the current settings on the touch panel of the machine.



- 2 To change the settings, select the setting item, change it on the displayed screen and then press [OK].
- 3 To confirm again, press [Proof Copy]. To hold, press [Suspended].  
→ Reference:  
For details on the [Suspended], refer to the "User's Guide - Copier".
- 4 Press [Start].  
Starts to print the rest of the print job.

## Calling a job sent by Hold Print

When the [Hold Print] is specified, the job is displayed in the [Suspend] list on the [JOB LIST] on the touch panel of the machine.



### Reference

For details on the functions of the keys on the control panel, refer to [User's Guide (Copier)].

## Select a job from the [JOB LIST] tab

- 1 Press the [JOB LIST] in the control panel.
- 2 Select the file to print from the [Suspend] list.



- When you press the [Release], you can move the job to the [Active] list and print.
- When you press the [All Release], you can move all job that are suspended to the [Active] list and print.
- When you press the [Ticket Edit], you can check and change the output settings on authentication dialog box.

- 3 Press the [Release] or [All Release] to print the holding job.

## 14.4 Printing a document on the machine for which user authentication is specified

When [User Authentication] is specified on the machine, a user name and password must be entered when printing.

The following 3 printer drivers support this feature.

- PS Plug-in driver for Windows
- PS Plug-in driver for Mac OS X
- PCL driver for Windows

### Reference

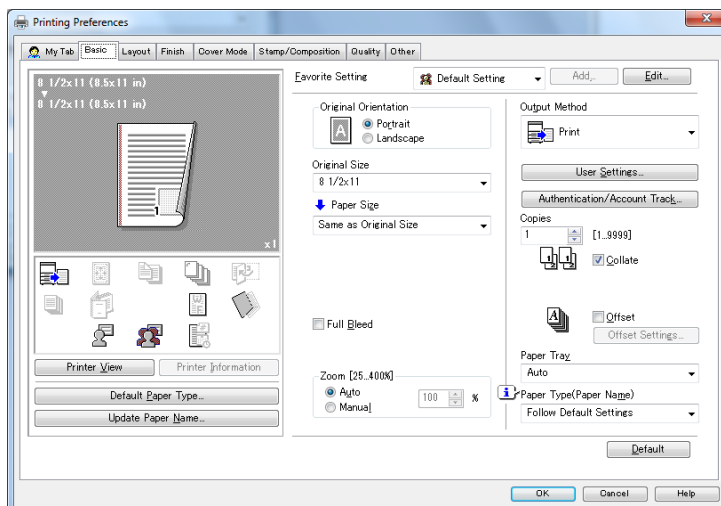
- If you enter an incorrect user name or password for the [User Authentication] settings of this machine or have not enabled [User Authentication], you will not be authenticated by this machine and the job will be discarded when printing.

When the [Enhanced Security Mode] is configured on the main body, enter only the user name because you need to enter the user name and password on the main body. It is not necessary to enter the password.

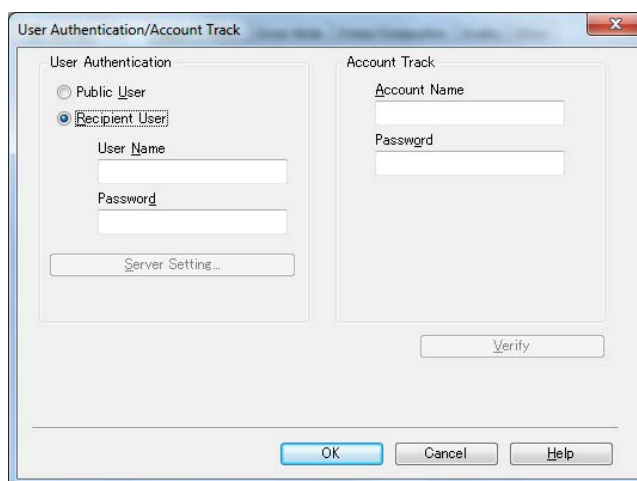
- Even a registered user cannot print a document if the user is not allowed to print. For [user authentication], contact the administrator of the machine.

## Setting a user authentication (PCL driver)

- 1 Open the [Basic] tab and click the [Authentication/Account Track].



- 2 Select the [Recipient User] in the [User Authentication].



- 3 Enter [User Name] and [Password] that are registered.

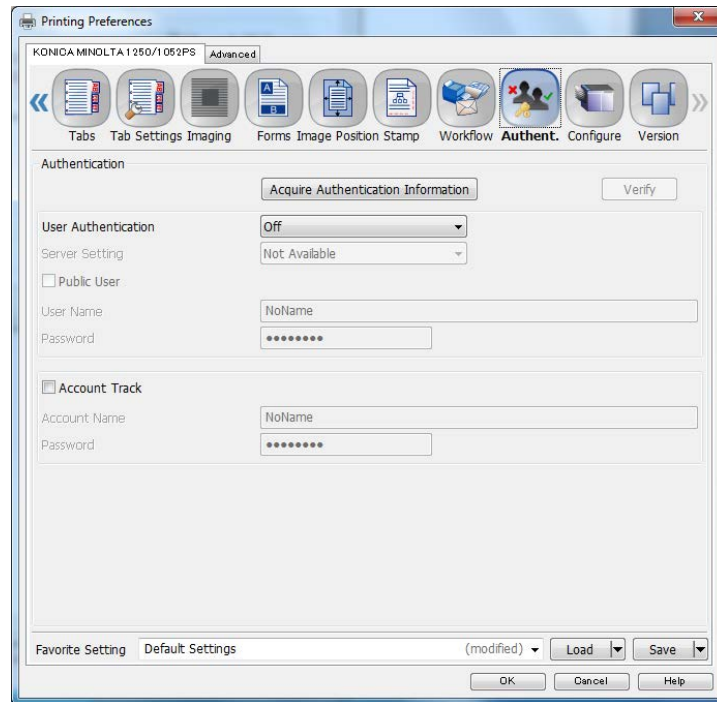
- The user name and password must be specified with up to 64 characters.  
You can complete the setting without specifying Password.

- 4 Click [OK].
- 5 Click [OK] to start printing.

If the entered user name is a name enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified user.

### Setting a user authentication (PS Plug-in driver)

- 1 Open the [Authent.] tab.
- 2 Select the appropriate server for authentication from [User Authentication].



- You can not select the [External Server] and [Enhanced Server] manually.  
It can be set automatically by clicking the [Acquire Authentication Information].

- 3 Enter [User Name] and [Password] that are registered.  
→ The user name and password must be specified with up to 64 characters.  
You can complete the setting without specifying Password.
- 4 Click [OK] to start printing.

If the entered user name is a name enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified user.

## 14.5 Printing a document on the machine for which Account Track function is enabled

When the [Account Track] settings are configured on the machine, you must enter the account name and password when printing.

The following 3 printer drivers support this feature.

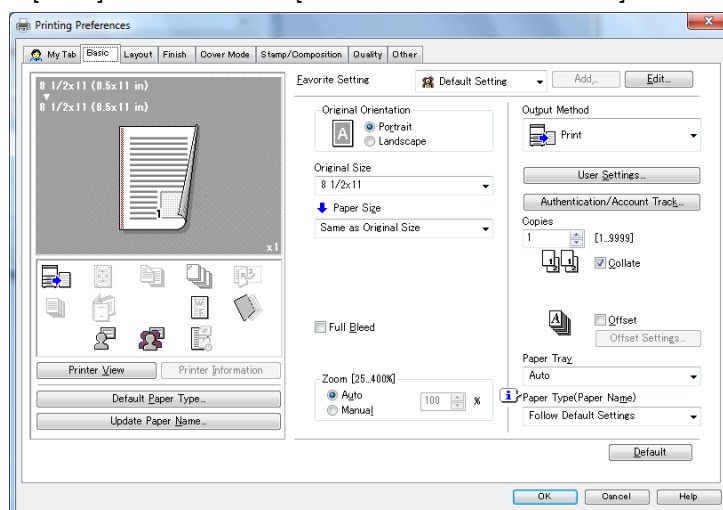
- PS Plug-in driver for Windows
- PS Plug-in driver for Mac OS X
- PCL driver for Windows

### Reference

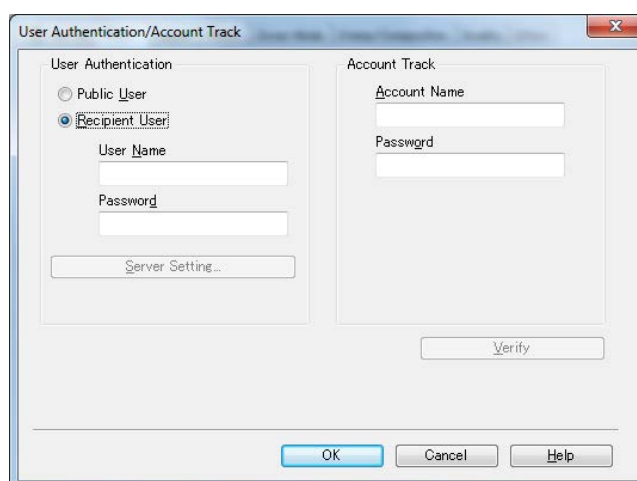
- If you enter an incorrect password for the [Account Track] settings on the machine or have not enabled [Account Track], you will not be authenticated by the printer and the job will be discarded when printing.
- Even a registered account cannot print a document if the account is not allowed to print.
- For account track, contact the administrator of the machine.

### Setting an account track (PCL Driver)

- 1 Open the [Basic] tab and click the [Authentication/Account Track].



- 2 Enter an [Account Name] and [Password] that are registered with the machine.



- The account name and password must be specified with up to 8 characters.  
You can complete the setting without specifying Password.

### Note

To set the account track, enable the device option manually on the [Configure] tab in advance. For details, refer to page 10-3.

3 Click [OK].

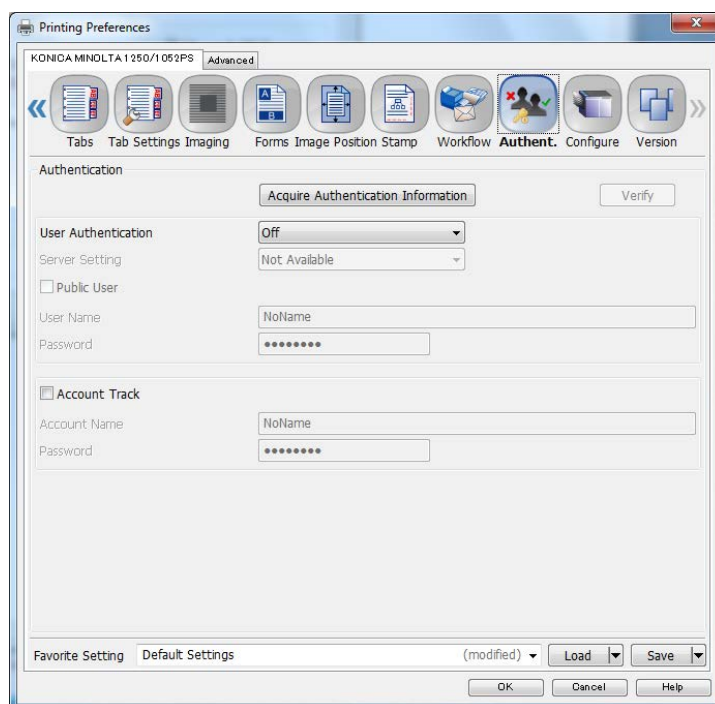
4 Click [OK] to start printing.

If the entered account name is a name enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified user.

## Setting an account track (PS Plug-in Driver)

1 Open the [Authent.] tab.

2 Enable the [Account Track] check box.



3 Enter an [Account Name] and [Password].

→ The account name and password must be specified with up to 8 characters.  
You can complete the setting without specifying Password.

4 Click [OK] to start printing.

If the entered account name is a name enabled on the machine, the job is printed and counted as a job for the specified user.



---

# 15

## Settings on the Control Panel

## 15 Settings on the Control Panel

This chapter describes the printer-related functions that can be specified from the control panel.

### 15.1 Controller Machine Setting

In [Controller], which is displayed by pressing [Controller] in the [MACHINE] screen in the control panel, you can set various settings on the controller.

#### 15.1.1 Displaying the Controller screen

- 1 In the control panel, press the [MACHINE] tab.
- 2 Press [Controller].

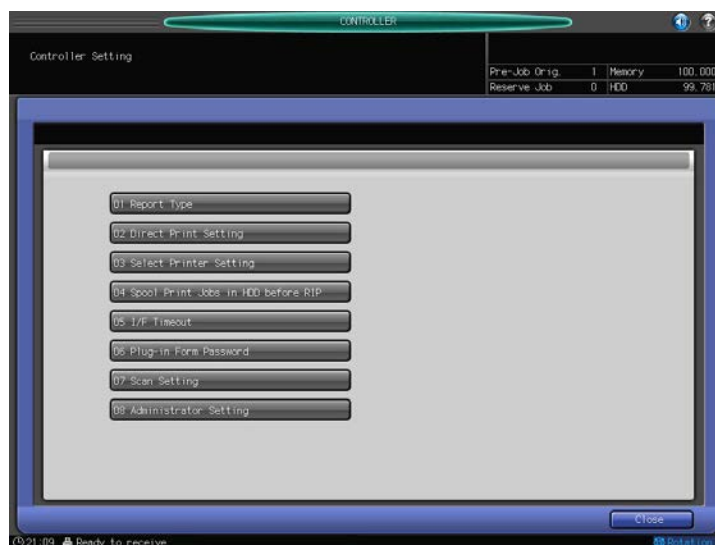


The Controller Machine Setting Menu screen is displayed.

#### Note

- The screens for "bizhub PRESS 1250" are used here. Some screens may not be displayed depending on the model.

## 15.1.2 Controller Machine Setting Menu screen



In the Controller Machine Setting Menu screen, you can set the following functions.

Item	Description	Reference page
Report Type	Outputs [Configuration Page Print], [PS Demo Page Print], [PCL Font List], and [PS Font List].	page 15-4
Direct Print Setting	You can configure several output settings including the [Basic Setting] for direct printing.	page 15-5
Select Printer Setting	Assigns the default output setting for the default port and default setting number for each port.	page 15-9
Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP	Select a job spool setting from [Auto], [Enable], or [Disable].	page 15-9
I/F Timeout	You can set the time until a communication timeout occurs.	page 15-10
Plug-in Form Password	Input a password for the form function for a PS Plug-in driver.	page 15-10
Scan Setting	You can set settings on network scanning. For details, refer to "User's Guide (Network Scanner)".	page 15-11
Administrator Settings	You can set the memory switch and machine default setting as an administrator.	page 15-12

Note

- The [Scan Setting] is not available in [bizhub PRESS 1250P].

## Report Type

This screen is displayed if you select [Report Type] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
Configuration Page Print	Press this to output a list of [Network Setting] and [Machine Setting].
PCL Demo Page Print	Press this to output [PCL Demo Page Print].
PS Demo Page Print	Press this to output [PS Demo Page Print].
PCL Font List	Press this to output [PCL Font List].
PS Font List	Press this to output [PS Font List].



### Reference

For samples for each report, refer to page 19-5.

## Direct Print Setting

This screen is displayed if you select [Direct Print Setting] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
[Setting Number (1-6)]	Select the setting number (1 - 6).
[Basic Setting]	Press this to set the basic settings such as [PDL], [Paper Tray Setting], [Output Tray Setting].
[PCL Setting]	Specify basic settings such as [Font Setting] and [Symbol Set].
[PS Setting]	Specify whether to print PS Error Print.
[TIFF Setting]	You can set [Auto Paper Select] and [Image Position].

## Direct Print Setting - Basic Settings

This screen is displayed if you select [Direct Print Setting] - [Basic Setting] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
[PDL]	Configure settings for the Page Description Language.
[Paper Tray Setting]	Specify the default paper tray setting.
[Output Tray Settings]	Specify the default output tray setting.

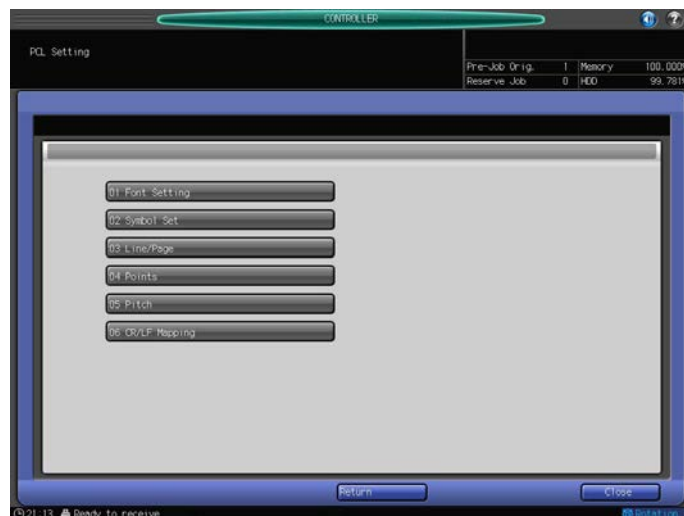
Item	Description
[Simplex/Duplex]	Specify the default simplex/duplex print setting.
[Binding Position]	Specify the default [Binding Position].
[Staple]	Configure the staple setting when the data to be printed has no staple setting information.
[Dual Staple Pitch]	Configure the pitch between two staples.
[Punch]	Configure the punch setting when the data to be printed has no punch setting information.
[Fold/Trimming]	You can set [Fold/Trimming] if there is no [Fold] or [Trimming] setting in print data.
[Offset]	Specify the default [Offset] setting.
[Output Application]	Specify the default [Output Application] setting.
[Order]	Specify the default [Order] setting.
[Sets]	Specify the default [Sets] setting.
[Sort/Group]	Specify the default [Sort/Group] setting.
[Paper Size]	Specify the default [Paper Size] setting.
[Orientation]	Specify the default [Orientation] setting.
[Banner Option]	Specify whether to print the banner page (cover page) showing the sender or title of the print job.
[Banner Tray]	Specify the paper tray used to print banner pages.
[Convert Paper Size]	Specify the converting paper size when the paper size that is specified by the Direct Print Setting is unavailable in the tray.
[Combine Originals]	Specify the default [Combine Originals] setting.



[Booklet Pagination]	Specify the default [Booklet Pagination] setting.
[Adhesive binding]	Specify the default [Adhesive binding] setting.
[Image Pos.]	Specify the default [Image Pos.] setting.
[Quality]	Specify the default [Quality] setting.
[Full bleed]	Specify the default [Full bleed] setting.
[Ring Binding]	Specify the default [Ring Binding] setting.
[180° Rotate]	Specify the default [180 Rotate] setting.

## Direct Print Setting - PCL Setting

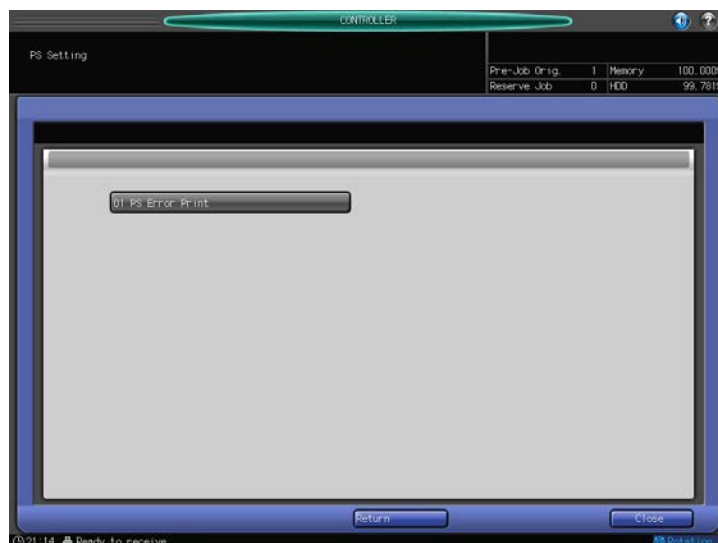
This screen is displayed if you select [Direct Print Setting] - [PCL Setting] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
[Font Settings]	Specify the default font settings. (Default : Courier)
[Symbol Set]	Specify the default symbol set settings. (Default : ROMAN8)
[Line/Page]	Specify the number of lines per page when printing text. (Default : 64 lines)
[Points]	Specify proportional font size in points. (Default : 12.00)
[Pitch]	Specify width of fixed-width font in pitch. (Default : 10.00)
[CR/LF Mapping]	Specify how to replace CR (Carriage Return), LF (Line Feed) and FF (Form Feed) when printing text data. (Default : Off)

## Direct Print Setting - PS Setting

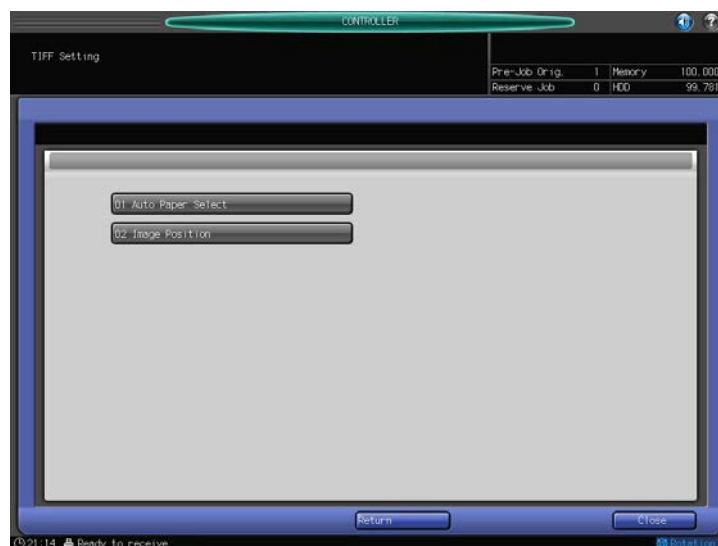
This screen is displayed if you select [Direct Print Setting] - [PS Setting] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
[PS Error Print]	Set whether to print error information when an error occurs during PS rasterization.

## Direct Print Setting - TIFF Setting

This screen is displayed if you select [Direct Print Setting] - [TIFF Setting] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.

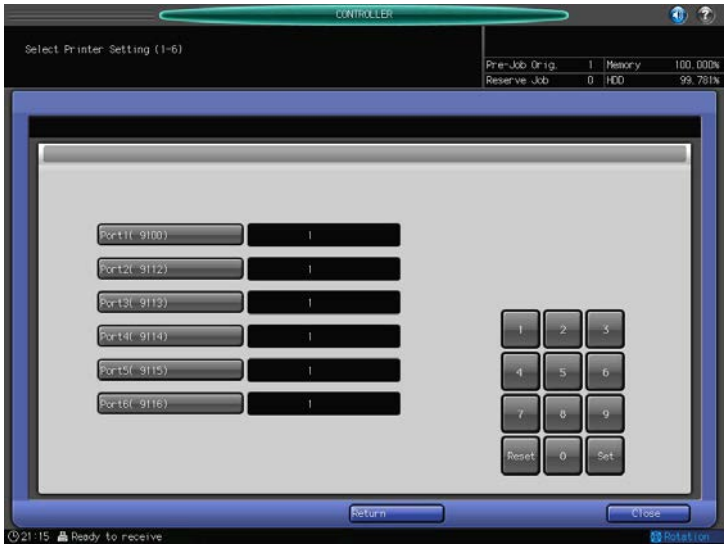


Item	Description
[Auto Paper Select]	It sets whether to print automatically on appropriate paper size in accordance with size of the TIFF image.
[Image Pos.]	It sets the print position for the TIFF image. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Select [Left] or [Center].</li> </ul>



Select Printer Setting

This screen is displayed if you select [Report Type] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



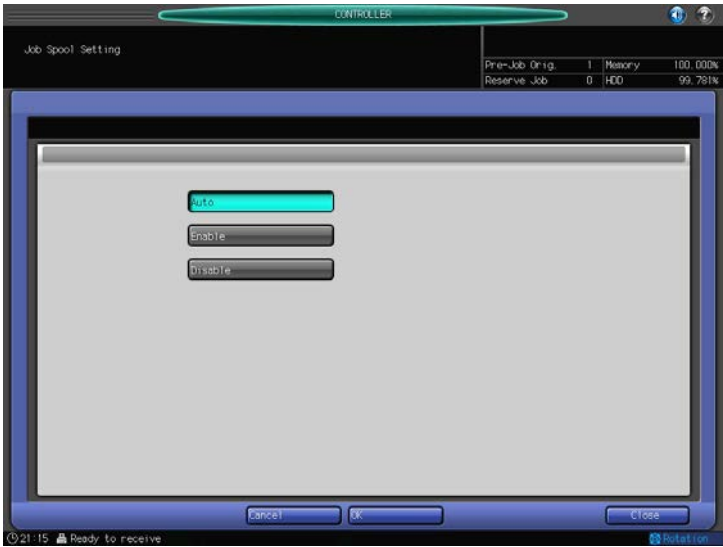
Item	Description
[Port1(9100)] - [Port6(9116)]	You can set output for each port (Setting Number 1 -6). Input a port number and press [Set].

Reference

- The setting number (1-6) will be reflected on to the settings in [Direct Print Setting].

Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP

This screen is displayed if you select [Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
[Job Spool Setting]	Specify a job spool setting. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• You can select [Auto], [Enable], or [Disable].</li></ul>

**NOTICE**

After the change, turn OFF/On the sub power switch to fix the setting.

I/F Timeout (sec)

This screen is displayed if you select [I/F Timeout] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
Network (10-3600)	Specify the communication timeout time for the network.
USB (10-1000)	Enter the communication timeout time for the USB.

Plug-in Form Password

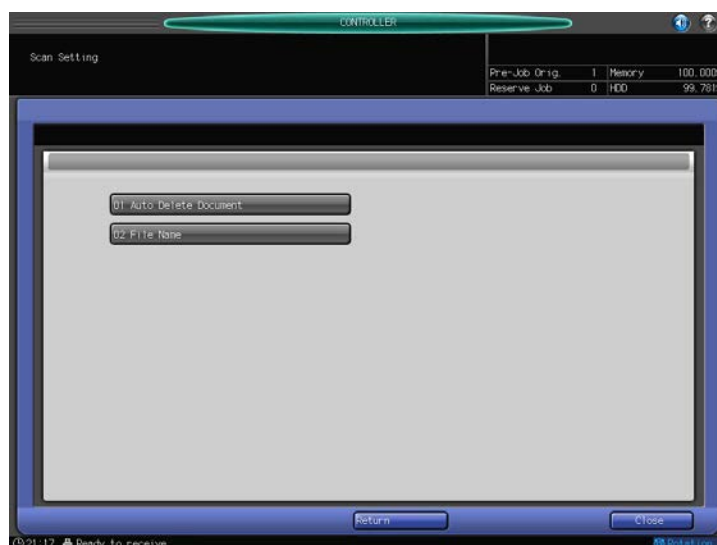
This screen is displayed if you select [Plug-in Form Password] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
Plug-in Form Password	It sets the password used to delete Form. The form function is available in the PS Plug-in driver. For details, refer to page 11-22. The default is "password".

## Scan Setting

This screen is displayed if you select [Scan Setting] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



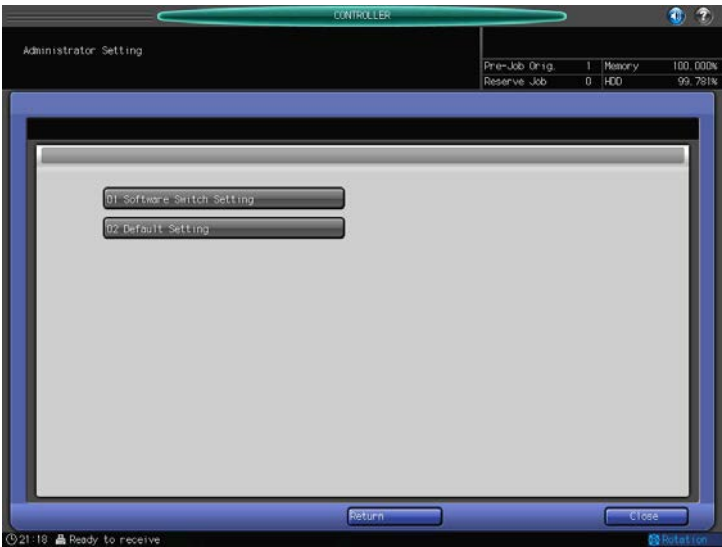
Item	Description
[Auto Delete Document]	Specify the setting on Auto Delete Document. For details, refer to "User's Guide (Network Scanner)".
[File Name]	Specify the setting on File Name. For details, refer to "User's Guide (Network Scanner)".

### Note

- The [Scan Setting] is not available in [bizhub PRESS 1250P].

Administrator Settings

This screen is displayed if you select [Administrator Settings] in the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen. For detailed information on how to open the [Controller Machine Setting Menu] screen, refer to page 15-2.



Item	Description
[Memory Switch]	Specify the Memory Switch. <div></div>
[Machine Default Setting]	Initialize the each setting. <div></div>

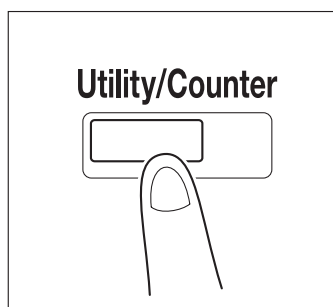
Reference

- [For details on Memory Switch, refer to User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference]" "

## 15.2 Basic operations of User Settings

### 15.2.1 Displaying the Utility Menu screen

- 1 Press [Utility/Counter].



The Utility Menu screen is displayed.



- Press [Exit] to complete the setting.
- To return through the hierarchy of the Utility menu, press [Close] until the desired screen appears.

### 15.2.2 Function Setting

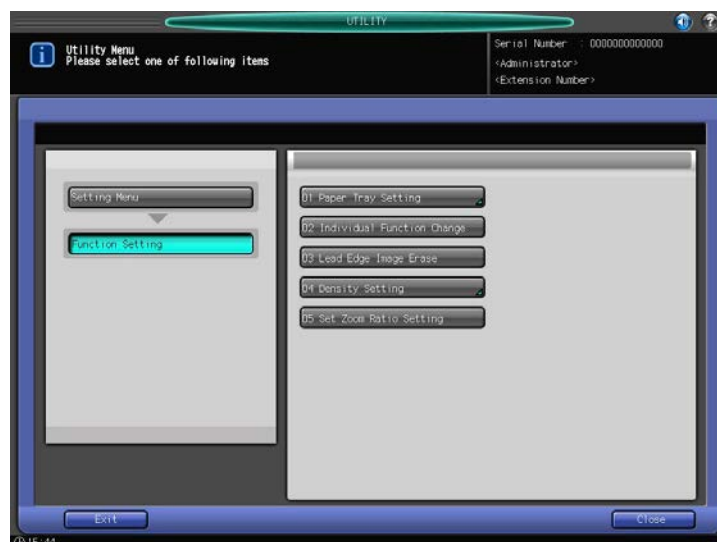
You can configure several functions for printing using the [Utility Menu] screen - [Function Setting].

- 1 Press the [Function Setting] on the Utility Menu screen.



→ For details on displaying the Function Setting screen, refer to page 15-13.

- 2 Press the item to specify.



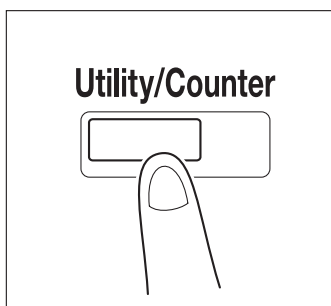
You can configure the following items on the Function Setting screen.

- [Paper Tray Setting] : Specify the paper tray settings.
- [Individual Function Change] : Specify the [Page Margin Decimal Point], [Page Margin Input Data Hold], [Printer Prohibit Timer], [, Needless Tab Paper Exit], [Auto Image Shift (Tab Print)] and other settings respectively.
- [Lead Edge Image Erase] : Specify the width to erase of lead edge image for standard paper size and wide/custom paper size individually.
- [Density Setting] : Specify the density to print.
- [Set Zoom Ratio Setting] : Register the zoom ratio.

## 15.3 Basic operations in Administrator Settings

### 15.3.1 Displaying the Administrator Settings screen

- 1 Press the [Utility/Counter] key.

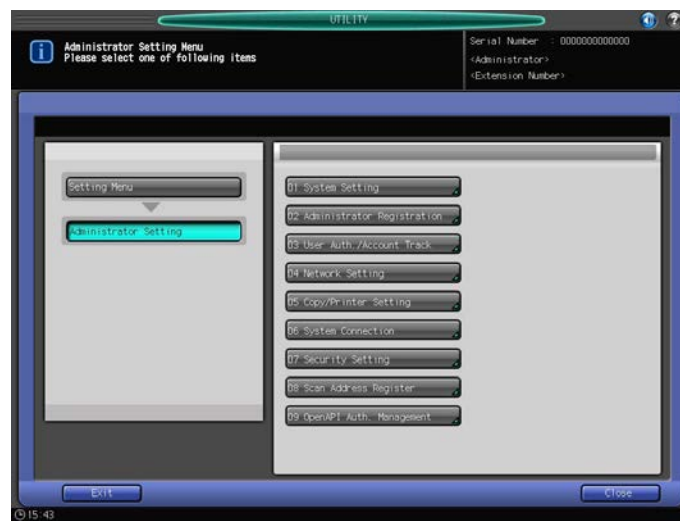


- 2 Press [Administrator Setting].



- 3 Enter the password, and then press [OK].
  - For details on setting or changing the password, refer to the [User's Guide (Copier)].
  - The Administrator Setting screen appears.
  - Press [Exit] to complete the setting.
  - To return through the hierarchy of the Utility menu, press [Close] until the desired screen appears.

## 15.3.2 Administrator Setting screen

**Reference**

For details on "NetWare Setting" for this machine, refer to User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference.

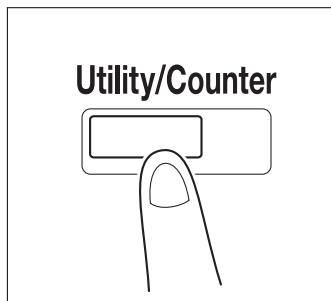


## 15.4 Controller NIC Setting Menu

You can set the network settings on the controller in the [Controller NIC Setting Menu] screen, which is displayed by pressing [Utility/Counter] - [Administrator Setting] - [Network Setting] - [Controller NIC Setting].

### 15.4.1 Displaying the Controller NIC Setting screen

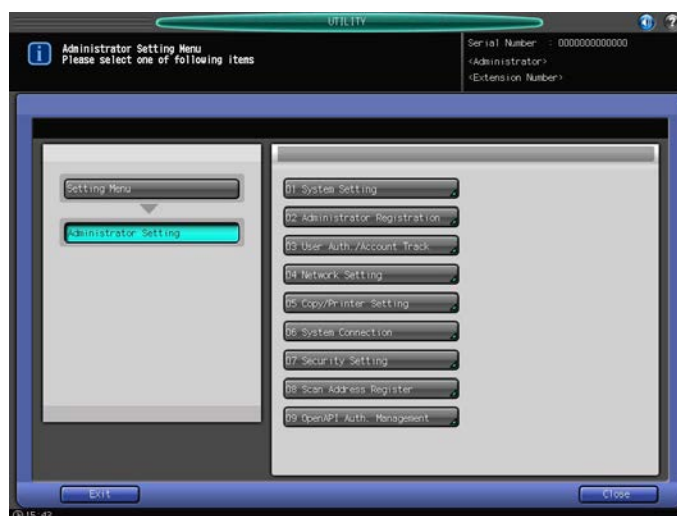
- 1 Press [Utility/Counter] in the control panel.



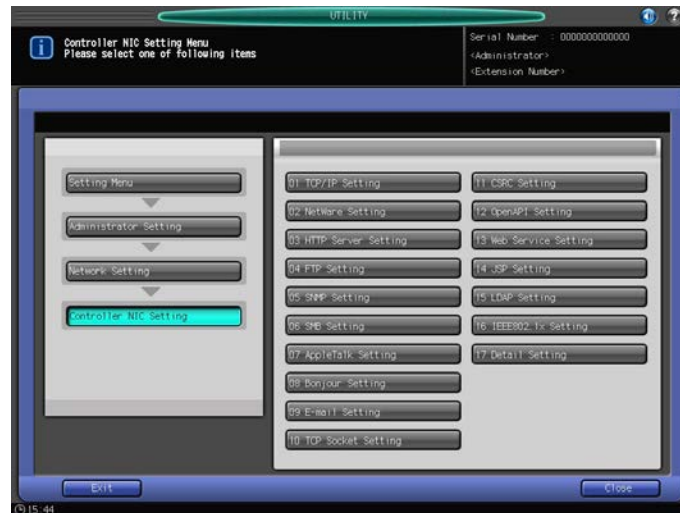
- 2 Press [Administrator Setting].



- 3 Press [Network Setting].



## 4 Press [Controller NIC Setting].



Item	Description
TCP/IP Setting	Specify settings on TCP/IP. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
NetWare Setting	Specify settings on NetWare. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
HTTP Server Setting	Specify settings on an HTTP server. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
FTP Setting	Specify settings on FTP. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
SNMP Setting	Specify settings on SNMP. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
SMB Setting	Specify settings on SMB. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
AppleTalk Setting	Specify settings on AppleTalk. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
Bonjour Setting	Specify settings on Bonjour. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
E-mail Setting	Specify settings on an E-mail. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
TCP Socket Setting	Specify settings on TCP Socket. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
CSRC Setting	Specify settings on CSRC. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
OpenAPI Setting	Specify settings on OpenAPI. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
Web Service Setting	Specify settings on Web service. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
JSP Setting	Specify settings on JSP. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
LDAP Setting	Specify settings on LDAP. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
IEEE802.1x Setting	Specify settings on an IEEE802.1X authentication. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
Detail Setting	Specify detail settings on an MAC address, network speed, and network protocol for the controller. For details, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".

---

# 16

## PageScope Web Connection

## 16 PageScope Web Connection

### 16.1 Using PageScope Web Connection

**PageScope Web Connection** is a device control utility provided by the HTTP server built in the image controller. Using a Web browser on a computer connected to the network, you can change machine settings and check the status of the machine.

#### 16.1.1 Operating environment

Network	Ethernet (TCP/IP)
Applications on computer	<p>&lt;Windows XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Microsoft Internet Explorer 8 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li>• Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Macintosh Mac OS X&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> </ul> <p>&lt;Linux&gt;</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> </ul> <p>Adobe® Flash® Player:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When you select the Flash as the display method, Flash Player is necessary to be installed.</li> <li>• To install the Flash Player, be sure the system requirement in advance.</li> </ul>

#### 16.1.2 Accessing PageScope Web Connection

- ✓ Start the Web browser to access **PageScope Web Connection**.
- ✓ If User Authentication is enabled, enter the user name and password. For details, refer to page 16-9.
- ✓ For details on specifying the IP address for the machine, refer to "User's Guide - POD Administrator's Reference".
- ✓ **PageScope Web Connection** has two view modes: Flash and HTML. For details, refer to page 16-8.

**1** Start the Web browser.

**2** Enter the IP address of the machine in the URL field, and then press [Enter].  
http://<IP address of the machine>/

Example : When the IP address of this machine is 192.168.1.20 :

- http://192.168.1.20/

When IPv6 is set to [ON] while a browser other than Internet Explorer 6 is used:

- Enter the IPv6 address enclosed in brackets [ ] to access PageScope Web Connection.
- http://<IP address of the machine>/

Example : When the IPv6 address of this machine is fe80::220:6bff:fe10:2f16:

- http://[fe80::220:6bff:fe10:2f16]/
- If IPv6 is set to [ON], add "fe 220::6:10bff:fe:2:6f IPv:1\_MFP" to the hosts file in advance, and specify the address with the domain name.

The main menu or login page appears.

### 16.1.3 Web browser cache

The Web browser has the cache function; therefore, the latest information may not be shown in the page displayed using **PageScope Web Connection**. Using the cache function may result in an operation failure. When using **PageScope Web Connection**, disable the cache function on the Web browser.

#### Reference

- Some Web browser versions may provide different menus and item names. For details, refer to the Help for the Web browser.
- With the cache function enabled, timeout occurs in the administrator mode, and after that, how many time you try to access, just timeout recurs. It results in the control panel of this machine being locked, and you cannot handle the control panel. In this case, turn the main power off, and then turn it on again. To avoid this problem, disable the cache function.

#### Note

- The screens for "bizhub PRESS 1250" are used here. Some screens may not be displayed depending on the model.

#### For Internet Explorer

- ✓ Open the Internet Option and select [General] - [History] - [Settings] - [Check for newer versions of stored pages:] - [Every visit to the page].

- 1 Select [Internet Options] in the [Tools] menu.
- 2 In the [General] tab, select [Temporary Internet files] - [Settings].
- 3 Select [Every visit to the page], and click [OK].

#### For Mozilla Firefox

- ✓ From the Tool menu, select [Option] - [Advanced] - [Network] - [Offline data], check [Limit the Cache Size] and then specify "0MB".

- 1 Select [Options] in the [Tools] menu.
- 2 Select [Privacy], and then click [Settings] in the Private Data section.
- 3 Select the [Cache] check box under [Private Data] select the [Clear private data when closing Firefox] check box under [Settings], and then click [OK].

### 16.1.4 Online help function

After logging in to **PageScope Web Connection**, click ; you can display the online help for the currently configured function.

#### Reference

- To display the online help, connect your computer to the Internet.

16.2 Login and Logout

16.2.1 Login and logout flows

Accessing with **PageScope Web Connection** displays the login page when User Authentication or Account Track is enabled, and displays the login page in the public user mode when User Authentication or Account Track is not enabled. When re-logging in to this machine as a different user or as an administrator, log out once, and log in again.

When user authentication or account track is not enabled

You are automatically logged in as a public user.

KONICA MINOLTA

Public

Logout

?

PageScope Web Connection

Ready to Scan

Model Name : bizhub PRESS 1250

Warming Up

Information

Job

Box

Direct Print

▼ Device Information

► Configuration Summary

► Option

► Consumables

► Meter Count

► Online Assistance

► Network Setting Information

► Print Setting Information

► Print Information

Device Information

Device Name

Device Location

Device Type Print/Copy/Scan



Paper Tray

Tray	Paper Size	Paper Name	Paper Type
Tray 1	A4 LEF	Coated	Coated
Tray 2	A4 LEF	Plain	Plain Paper
Tray 3	A4 SEF	Fine	Fine
Tray 4	A4 LEF	Embossed	Embossed
Tray 5	A3 SEF	BookNews	BookNews

Perfect Binder Count: 3,207 x 47.3 mm

Output Tray

Perfect Binder Sub Tray / Stacker of Perfect Binder

Administrator Information

Administrator Name kikkoman

Extension No. -----

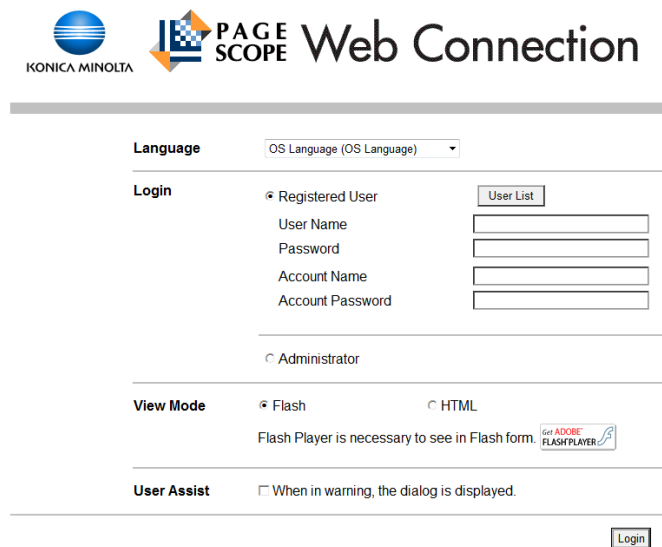
Admin. E-mail Address koma@km.com



To log in as an administrator, log out once.



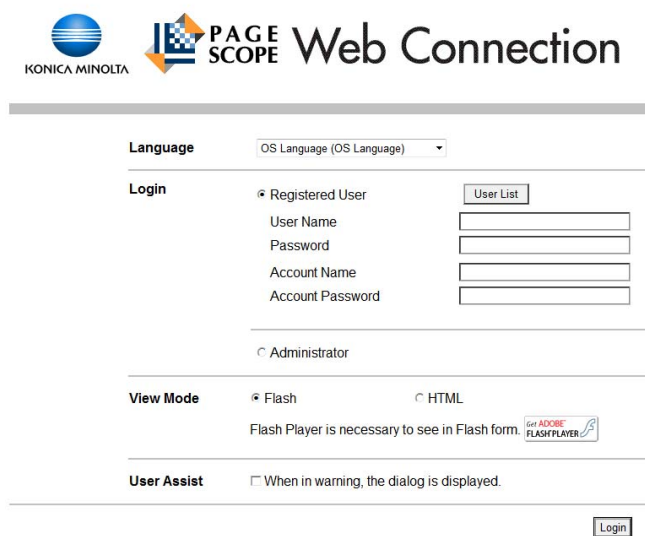
Login as an administrator again.



The image shows the login interface for the Konicamimoltago Page Scope Web Connection. At the top, there are logos for Konicamimoltago and Page Scope, followed by the text 'Web Connection'. Below this is a horizontal line. The form contains several sections: 'Language' with a dropdown menu set to 'OS Language (OS Language)'; 'Login' with two radio buttons, 'Registered User' (selected) and 'Administrator'; a 'User List' button; and four input fields for 'User Name', 'Password', 'Account Name', and 'Account Password'; 'View Mode' with two radio buttons, 'Flash' (selected) and 'HTML'; a note 'Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.' with a small Adobe Flash Player icon; and 'User Assist' with a checkbox 'When in warning, the dialog is displayed.' which is unchecked. At the bottom right is a 'Login' button.

### When User Authentication or Account Track is enabled

The User Authentication or Account Track page appears. Enter the required items to log in.



This is a duplicate of the login form shown in the previous block. It features the same layout: Konicamimoltago and Page Scope logos, 'Web Connection' title, 'Language' dropdown, 'Login' radio buttons (Registered User selected), 'User List' button, four input fields for user credentials, 'View Mode' radio buttons (Flash selected), a Flash Player requirement note, an unchecked 'User Assist' checkbox, and a 'Login' button.



To log in as a different user or as an administrator, log out once.



Log in again.



**Language** OS Language (OS Language) ▼

**Login**

☒ Registered User

User List

User Name

Password

Account Name

Account Password

☐ Administrator

**View Mode**

☒ Flash

☐ HTML

Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.



**User Assist**

☐ When in warning, the dialog is displayed.

Login



### 16.2.2 Logout

Click [Logout] on the upper right of the screen to display a logout confirmation screen. Click [OK] to return to the login page.

#### Reference

- The login page that appears differs depending on whether Authentication is enabled in this machine.
- If timeout occurred because no operation was performed for the specified period during login or if authentication setting was changed using the control panel while logging in to the user mode, you will automatically log out of the mode.
- For details on how to specify the timeout period of the user or administrator modes, refer to page 16-18.

KONICA MINOLTA Public Logout ?

Web Connection  
Model Name : bizhub PRESS 1250

Ready to Scan  
Warming Up

Information Job Box Direct Print

▼ Device Information

- Configuration Summary
- Option
- Consumables
- Meter Count
- Online Assistance
- Network Setting Information
- Print Setting Information
- Print Information

**Device Information**

Device Name  
Device Location  
Device Type Print/Copy/Scan

**Paper Tray**

Tray	Paper Size	Paper Name	Paper Type
Tray 1	A4 LEF	Coated	Coated
Tray 2	A4 LEF	Plain	Plain Paper
Tray 3	A4 SEF	Fine	Fine
Tray 4	A4 LEF	Embossed	Embossed
Tray 5	A3 SEF	Book/News	Book/News
Perfect Binder Cover	207 x 473 mm	Fine	Fine

**Output Tray**  
Perfect Binder Sub Tray / Stacker of Perfect Binder

**Administrator Information**

Administrator Name kikkoman  
Extension No. -----  
Admin. E-mail Address koma@km.com

### 16.2.3 Login

**PageScope Web Connection** provides the user or administrator mode depending on how to log in.

#### Login options

You can select items as required when logging in.

Item	Description
[Language]	Select the display language.
[View Mode]	Select Flash or HTML. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the screen reader software is used, we recommend selecting [HTML] as the view mode.</li> <li>• Flash Player is required when selecting [Flash].</li> </ul>
[User Assist]	Select the [Display dialog box in case of warning.] check box to display the dialog box when a warning has occurred or during operation after login.

#### Reference

- If [Flash] is selected in [View Mode], the following items are displayed using Flash.
  - Status icons and messages
  - Status of [Paper Tray] in [Information] - [Device Information]
  - Page display of [Job]

#### Logging in as a public user

If user authentication is not enabled on the machine, you will be logging in as a public user. In the login page, select [Public User Access], and click [Login].

### Logging in as a registered user.

Specify the registered user name and password to log in when User Authentication is enabled in this machine.

→ In the login page, enter the user name and the password, and click [Login].

**KONICA MINOLTA** **PAGE SCOPE** **Web Connection**

**Language** OS Language (OS Language) ▼

**Login**

☒ Registered User

User Name

Password

Account Name

Account Password

☐ Administrator

**View Mode** ☒ Flash ☐ HTML

Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form. [Get ADOBE FLASH PLAYER](#)

**User Assist** ☐ When in warning, the dialog is displayed.

#### Reference

- If Account Track is enabled, also enter the account name and password.

## Logging in to the administrator mode

To configure the system or network setting, log in to the administrator mode.

- 1 Select [Administrator], and then click [Login].

**Language** OS Language (OS Language) ▼

---

**Login**

☒ Registered User User List

User Name

Password

Account Name

Account Password

---

☐ Administrator

---

**View Mode** ☒ Flash ☐ HTML

Flash Player is necessary to see in Flash form.

---

**User Assist** ☐ When in warning, the dialog is displayed.

---

Login

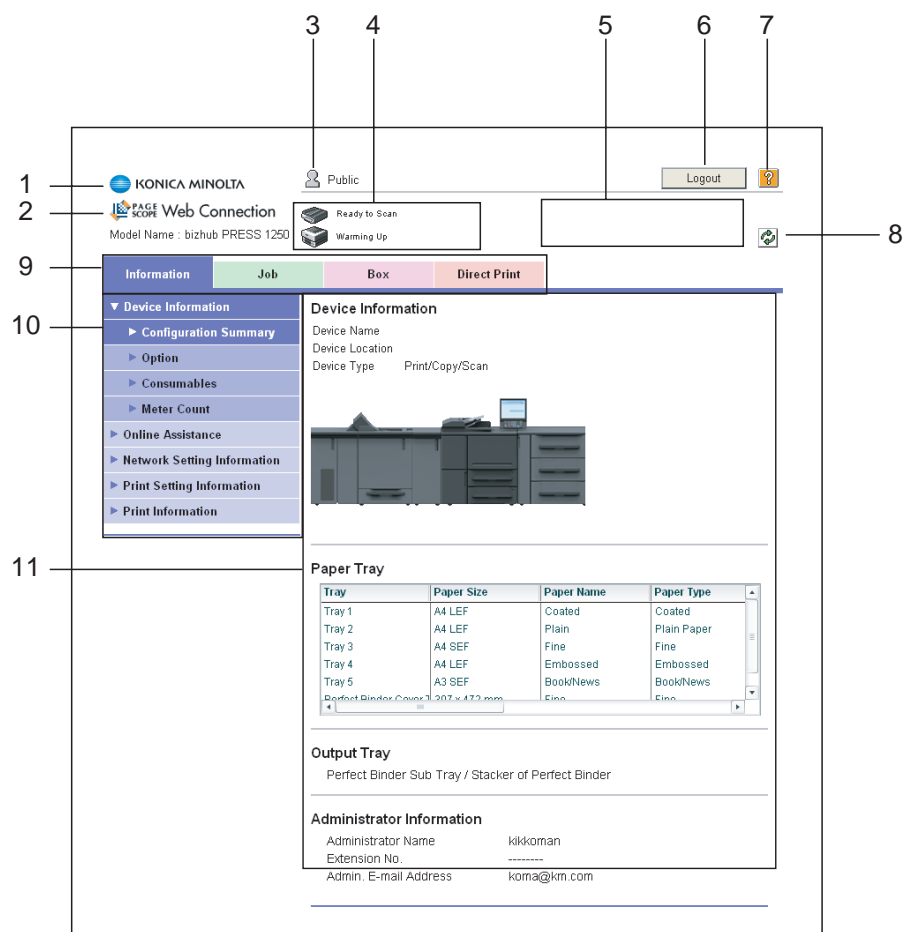
- 2 Enter the administrator password, and then click [OK].
  - Logging in to the administrator mode locks the control panel of this machine, and you will not be able to use it.
  - Depending on the status of this machine, you may not be able to log in to the administrator mode.
  - The password entry page varies depending on the machine settings.

## 16.3 Structure of pages

Logging in to **PageScope Web Connection** displays the page that is configured as shown below. The following shows an example of the page displayed when Device Information is selected in the Information tab.

Reference

- The contents of the **PageScope Web Connection** pages vary depending on the options installed in this machine or the settings of this machine.



No.	Item	Description
1	KONICA MINOLTA logo	Click this logo to jump to the Konica Minolta Web site at the following URL. <a href="http://www.konicaminolta.com/">http://www.konicaminolta.com/</a>
2	PageScope Web Connection logo	Click this logo to display the version information of <b>PageScope Web Connection</b> .
3	Login user name	Displays the icon of the current mode and the name of the user who is logged on (public, administrator, registered user, or account). Click the user name to display the login user name.
4	Status display	Displays the status of the printer and scanner sections of this machine with icons and messages. Clicking the desired icon when an error occurs displays the information (Consumable Info, Paper Tray) associated with the icon to enable you to check the status.
5	Message display	Displays the operating status of this machine.
6	[Logout]	Click this button to log out the current mode and log in again.
7	Help	You can display the online help for the currently configured function. For the specified pages, refer to [Online Assistance] in page 16-13.
8	Refresh	Click this icon to refresh the information displayed in the page.

No.	Item	Description
9	Tab	Select the category of the item to be displayed. The following icons are displayed in the user mode. <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Information</li><li>• Job</li><li>• Box</li><li>• Direct Print</li></ul>
10	Menu	Displays information and setting for the selected tab. The menu that appears in this area varies depending on which tab was selected.
11	Information and settings	Displays the details of the item selected in the menu.

## 16.4 Overview of the user mode

After logging in to PageScope Web Connection in the user mode, the following functions can be specified.

### 16.4.1 Information



#### Reference

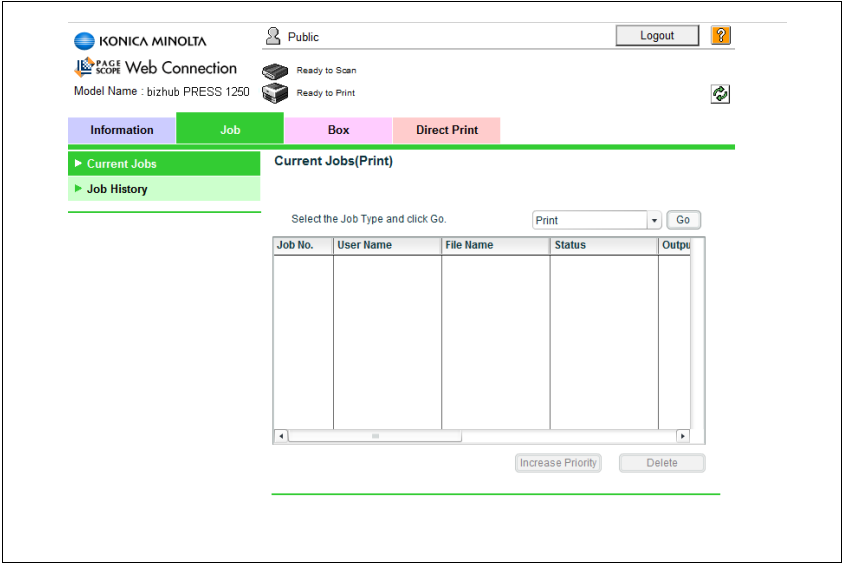
For details on the user mode, refer to the online help for **PageScope Web Connection**. For details on the online help, refer to page 16-3.

The screenshot displays the 'Information' tab of the PageScope Web Connection interface. At the top, it shows the KONICA MINOLTA logo, a 'Public' user profile, and a 'Logout' button. Below this, the 'PAGE SCOPE Web Connection' header is visible, along with status indicators 'Ready to Scan' and 'Warming Up', and the 'Model Name : bizhub PRESS 1250'. The main navigation bar includes 'Information' (selected), 'Job', 'Box', and 'Direct Print'. The left sidebar lists various information categories: Device Information (expanded), Configuration Summary, Option, Consumables, Meter Count, Online Assistance, Network Setting Information, Print Setting Information, and Print Information. The main content area shows 'Device Information' with fields for Device Name, Device Location, and Device Type (Print/Copy/Scan). Below this is an image of the bizhub PRESS 1250 machine. Further down, the 'Paper Tray' section contains a table with 5 trays, detailing Paper Size, Paper Name, and Paper Type. The 'Output Tray' section indicates 'Perfect Binder Sub Tray / Stacker of Perfect Binder'. Finally, the 'Administrator Information' section lists the Administrator Name (kikkoman), Extension No. (\*\*\*\*\*), and Admin. E-mail Address (koma@km.com).

Tray	Paper Size	Paper Name	Paper Type
Tray 1	A4 LEF	Coated	Coated
Tray 2	A4 LEF	Plain	Plain Paper
Tray 3	A4 SEF	Fine	Fine
Tray 4	A4 LEF	Embossed	Embossed
Tray 5	A3 SEF	BookNews	BookNews

Item	Description
[Device Information]	Enables you to check the components, options, consumables, and meter counts of this machine.
[Online Assistance]	Enables you to check the online assistance about this product.
[Network Setting Information]	Enables you to check the network settings of this machine.
[Print Setting Information]	The Print Setting Information related to the machine's image controller can be checked.
[Print Information]	Prints font or configuration information.

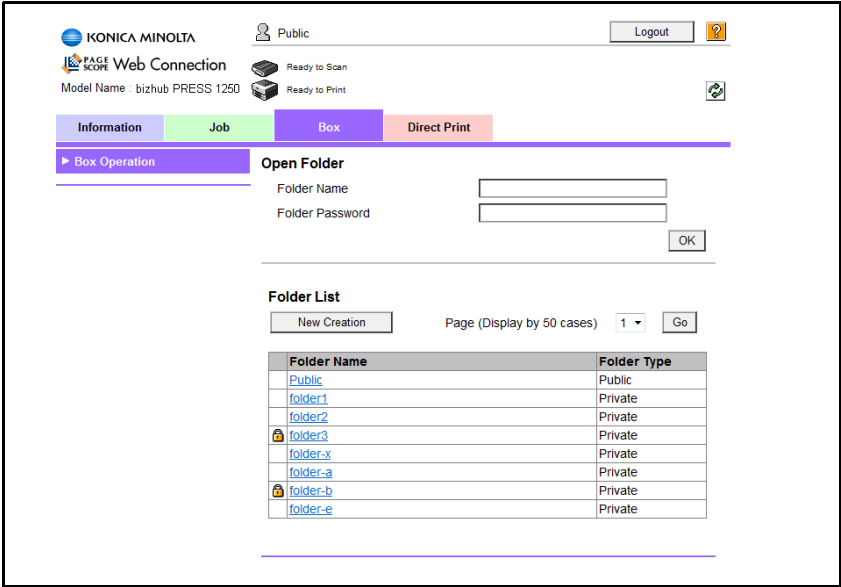
16.4.2 Job



Item	Description
[Current Jobs]	Enables you to check the currently executed job or queued jobs.
[Job History]	Enables you to check the executed jobs.

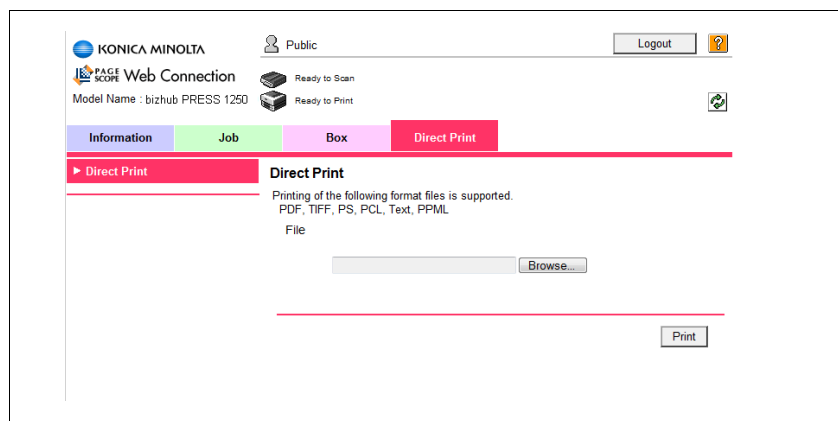


16.4.3 Box



Item	Description
[Folder Name]	Enter the Folder Name of Box.
[Folder Pass-word]	Enter the password that is specified to the folder.
[New]	Click this button to create a new folder
[Go]	Displays the list of boxes on the selected page.

## 16.4.4 Direct print



Item	Description
[Direct Print]	Specify a file saved in the computer to print it using this machine.

## Reference

- When you select [Utility] - [Administrator Setting] - [User Authentication Setting] - [Print Without Authentication] - [Restrict] and the User Authentication is other than [OFF] or the [Account Track] is [ON], an alert is displayed and [Direct Print] is not available.

## 16.5 Administrator mode overview

Logging in to the administrator mode enables you to use the following functions.

Reference

- For details on the administrator mode, refer to "User's Guide (POD Administrator's Reference)".

### 16.5.1 Maintenance

Item	Description
[Meter Count]	Enables you to check the meter count of this machine.
[ROM Version]	Enables you to check the ROM version.
[Import/Export]	Saves (exports) setting information, User Authentication/Account Track information, or Meter Count information of this machine as a file, or writes (import) it from a file to this machine.
[Status Notification Setting]	Configure the function to be reported to a registered user when an error has occurred in this machine. Specify the destination and items to notify a registered user of an error.
[Machine Setting]	Changes the registration information of this machine.
[Online Assistance]	Specify support information (such as contact name, corporate URL, or online manual URL) of this machine. To display this information, select [Information] - [Online Assistance].
[Initialize]	Return the Network Settings to the factory default.
[Memory Switch]	Specify the Memory Switch.

## 16.5.2 Security

KONICA MINOLTA Administrator Logout ?

Web Connection Ready to Scan

Model Name : bizhub PRESS 1250 In Menu (Admin Mode)

Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Scan Network

Authentication

- User Auth/Account Track
- External Server Registration
- User Registration
- Account Track Registration
- PKI Settings
- Certificate Verification Settings
- Auto Logout
- Administrator Password Setting

User Auth/Account Track

General Settings OFF

Public User Access Allow

Account Track OFF

Account Track Input Method Account Name & Password

Synchronize User Authentication & Account Track Synchronize

Number of Counters Assigned for Users (1-999)

When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum Stop Immediately

Ticket Hold Time Setting (Active Directory) 60 Minute (1-60)

OK Cancel

Item	Description
[Authentication Setting]	Configure the User Authentication or Account Track setting in this machine. To enable authentication, configure the number of assigned counters or the When Number of Jobs Reach Maximum setting. In addition, the Initial Setting Limit for non registered user who is authorized by the external authentication server can be specified in [Default Function Permission].
[User Registration]	When the Main Body is specified for the authentication server and User Authentication or Account Track setting is enabled, register the user and specify the user settings.
[Account Track Registration]	When enabling Account Track, register and edit the target account.
[PKI Setting]	Specify the settings for certificates.
[Cert. Verification Set.]	Specify the items to validate a certificate.
[Auto Logout]	Specify the time to automatically log out the administrator or user mode.
[Administrator Password Setting]	Specify the password to log in to the administrator mode.

## 16.5.3 Box

The function of the Box screen for the administrator mode is the same with the user mode.

For details, refer to page 16-15.

## 16.5.4 Printer Setting

KONICA MINOLTA Administrator Logout ?

PAGE SCOPE Web Connection Ready to Scan

Model Name : bizhub PRESS 1250 In Menu (Admin Mode)

Maintenance Security Box **Print Setting** Scan Network

► Default Setting  
► Job Spool Setting  
► Interface Setting  
► Select Printer Setting

**Print Setting**

Setting No	Default Setting	Basic Setting	PCL Setting	PS Setting	TIFF Setting
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Edit	Edit	Edit	Edit
2	<input type="radio"/>	Edit	Edit	Edit	Edit
3	<input type="radio"/>	Edit	Edit	Edit	Edit
4	<input type="radio"/>	Edit	Edit	Edit	Edit
5	<input type="radio"/>	Edit	Edit	Edit	Edit
6	<input type="radio"/>	Edit	Edit	Edit	Edit

OK Cancel

Item	Description
[Machine Default Setting]	6 patterns of printer default settings for print can be registered. The settings selected by [Default Setting] radio button can be displayed at the [Information] - [Printer Setting Information].
[Job Spool Setting]	Specify whether to set the job spool setting or not.
[Interface Setting]	Specify the timeout period of the interface.
[Select Printer Setting]	Specify the output setting for each port.

## 16.5.5 Scan

The screenshot shows the Konica Minolta Web Connection interface for the bizhub PRESS 1250. The user is logged in as Administrator. The interface includes a top navigation bar with tabs: Maintenance, Security, Box, Print Setting, Scan (selected), and Network. On the left, there is a sidebar with expandable sections: Subject (selected), Text, and Scanner Settings. The main content area displays the 'Subject List' table.

No.	Default	Subject	Edit	Delete
1	<input checked="" type="radio"/>	Scan Data	Edit	Delete
2	<input type="radio"/>		Edit	Delete
3	<input type="radio"/>		Edit	Delete
4	<input type="radio"/>		Edit	Delete
5	<input type="radio"/>		Edit	Delete

At the bottom of the table, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

Item	Description
[Subject]	Register up to 5 subjects to be used when sending an E-mail.
[Text]	Register up to 5 body messages to be used when sending an E-mail.
[Scan Settings]	Specify settings on the scanner function.

## 16.5.6 Network

KONICA MINOLTA  
Web Connection  
Model Name: bizhub PRESS 1250

Administrator  
Ready to Scan  
In Menu (Admin Mode)

Logout ?

Maintenance Security Box Print Setting Scan Network

▼ TCP/IP Setting

- ▶ TCP/IP Setting
- ▶ IP Filtering
- ▶ IPsec Setting
- ▶ Time Adjustment Setting
- ▶ E-mail Setting
- ▶ LDAP Setting
- ▶ IPP Setting
- ▶ FTP Setting
- ▶ SNMP Setting
- ▶ SMB Setting
- ▶ Web Service Setting
- ▶ Bonjour Setting
- ▶ NetWare Setting
- ▶ AppleTalk Setting
- ▶ OpenAPI Setting
- ▶ TCP Socket Setting
- ▶ IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting
- ▶ JSP Setting

**TCP/IP Setting**  
\*(Please turn Main Switch OFF/ON.)

TCP/IP Setting\* Enable ▼

Network Speed Auto ▼

IP Address Setting Method\* Manual Setting ▼

☐ DHCP\*  
☐ BootP\*  
☒ ARP/PING\*  
☒ AutoIP\*

IP Address 10.11.2.130

Subnet Mask 255.255.240.0

Default Gateway 10.11.0.1

IPv6 Setting Enable ▼

IPv6 Auto Setting\* Enable ▼

DHCPv6 Setting\* Enable ▼

Link-Local Address fe80:0000:0000:0000:0250:aaff:fe21:c05d

Global Address 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000

Prefix Length (1-128)

Gateway Address 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000

RAW Port Number

Port 1 ☒ 9100 (1-65535)

Port 2 ☒ 9112 (1-65535)

Port 3 ☒ 9113 (1-65535)

Item	Description
[TCP/IP Setting]	Configure the TCP/IP setting when connecting this machine via network.
[Time Adjustment Setting]	Specify whether to adjust time using an NTP server or not.
[E-mail Setting]	Configure the settings to send or receive E-mails, and specify the extension function such as E-mail authentication.
[LDAP Setting]	Configure the settings to register the LDAP server.
[IPP Setting]	Configure the IPP print setting.
[FTP Setting]	Configure the settings to use this machine as an FTP client or server.
[SNMP Setting]	Configure SNMP settings.
[SMB Setting]	Configure the SMB client, WINS, SMB print, or Direct Hosting setting.
[Web Service Setting]	Configure the settings to perform scanning or printing using Web services.
[Bonjour Setting]	Configure Bonjour settings.
[NetWare Setting]	Configure NetWare settings.
[AppleTalk Setting]	Configure AppleTalk settings.
[OpenAPI Setting]	Configure the OpenAPI settings.

Item	Description
[TCP Socket Setting]	Configure the TCP Socket settings to have a data communication between this machine and the application software in your computer.
[IEEE802.1x Authentication Setting]	Configure IEEE802.1X authentication settings.
[JSP Setting]	Specify settings on JSP.



---

**17**

**Utility tool**

---

## 17 Utility tool

### 17.1 Font Management Utility

You can use "Font Management Utility" to add or delete a PostScript font to the image controller.



#### **Reference**

*For details, refer to User's Guide in "Font Management Utility" in the [PAGESCOPE UTILITIES] CD-ROM.*

---

# 18

## Troubleshooting

## 18 Troubleshooting

### 18.1 Cannot print

This section describes how to solve issues and problems that you may encounter while using the printer.

If you cannot print even when you have completed the printing procedure, check the following items in order from beginning to end.

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
A message saying "Printer is not connected" or "Print Error" appears on the computer screen.	The printer driver specified when printing may not be supported by the image controller.	Check the specified printer name.
	The network or USB cable may be disconnected.	Check that the cable is correctly connected.
	An error may have occurred on this machine.	Check the control panel of this machine.
	Memory may be insufficient.	Perform a test printing to check whether printing is possible.
A postscript error appears on the computer screen.	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Perform a test printing to check whether printing is possible.
	There may be an error in the application software settings.	Refer to the user's manual of the application software to check the settings.
	The file printing settings may be incorrect.	Change the settings and try to print again.

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Print processing on the computer finished, but printing does not start.	The printer driver specified when printing may not be supported by the image controller.	Check the specified printer name.
	The network or USB cable may be disconnected.	Check that the cable is correctly connected.
	An error may have occurred on this machine.	Check the control panel of this machine.
	Unprocessed jobs may remain on this machine and be waiting to be processed.	Check the processing order for the job using [Job List] on the control panel of this machine.
	When executing the print job, [Save] may have been specified.	Using [Job List] - [Suspend] on the control panel of this machine, check whether the job is held or not.
	[Secure Print Only] may be specified on the machine.	Use [Secure Print] when executing the print job.
	User authentication or account track may be disabled on the printer driver.	Acquire the authentication information using the printer driver.
	When the account track is enabled, you may have entered an unregistered account track code or password.	Enter the correct account name and password.
	When the user authentication is enabled, you may have entered an unregistered user name or password.	Enter the correct user name or password.
	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Perform a test printing to check whether printing is possible.
	Network connection with the image controller is not established (when connecting via the network).	Contact your network administrator.
Secure print is not available.	The password rules may be enabled on the machine.	Specify a password according to the password rules.
	Different encryption passphrases may be specified for the printer driver and the machine.	Specify the same encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver.
Printing in the user authentication or account track mode is not available.	The user name, account name or password is incorrect.	Enter the correct user name, account name and password.
	User authentication or account track may be disabled on the printer driver.	Enable user authentication or account track on the printer driver.
	Different encryption passphrases may be specified for the printer driver and the machine.	Specify the same encryption passphrase for the machine and the printer driver.
	The entered user name or account name may not be authorized.	Check with the administrator whether the user name or account name concerned is authorized for printing.
Printing is not available when you have selected [Public User] in user authentication.	Printing by public users may be prohibited on the machine.	Check with the administrator whether printing by public users is permitted.

When the above troubleshooting does not eliminate the problem, refer to the [User's Guide - Copier].

## 18.2 Cannot configure the settings/Cannot print according to the settings

Check the following items when you cannot configure settings of the printer driver or cannot print according to the settings you have configured.

### Reference

- Some items for the printer driver may not be configured simultaneously.

### 18.2.1 The printer driver settings have no effect

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Cannot select items in the printer driver.	Some functions cannot be combined.	Grayed out items cannot be configured.
A "conflict" message saying "unable to configure" or "function will be canceled" appears.	You are trying to configure the functions that cannot be combined.	Check carefully the functions you have specified, and then specify the functions that can be combined.
Cannot print according to the settings you have configured.	The settings may not be configured correctly.	Check the setting of each item of the printer driver.
	The selected functions can be combined in the printer driver, but may not be combined in this machine.	
	The paper size or paper orientation specified in the application may take precedence over the settings in the printer driver when printing.	
The staple function cannot be specified.	To use the Staple function, an optional stapler is necessary to be installed.	Install the required options and enable them on the printer driver.
Cannot staple.	When printing a large number of pages, stapling cannot be performed.	Change the number of pages to be printed.
	If the document contains pages of different sizes, stapling cannot be performed.	Check the document.
The stapling position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the stapling position in the printer driver settings.
Cannot specify the punch function.	It requires a punch kit, or multi hole punch.	Install the required options and enable them on the printer driver.
	The hole punching cannot be specified when Booklet is selected as the paper type.	Check the setting of each item of the printer driver.
Cannot punch.	Printed pages may be fed out without being punched if the paper is loaded into the paper source with an incorrect orientation.	Check the orientation setting.
The punch position is not as expected.	The orientation setting is not correct.	Check the punching position in the printer driver settings.
Combination fails; pages are not combined, but are printed separately.	Originals having different orientations are combined.	Align the orientations of the original.
The overlay is not printed properly.	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Simplify the overlay to reduce the data size.
Images are not printed properly.	Memory of the computer may be insufficient.	Simplify the images to reduce the data size.

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Paper is not fed from the specified paper source.	Paper will not be fed from the specified paper source if that paper source is loaded with paper of a different size or orientation.	Load the paper of the appropriate size and orientation into the desired paper source.
The user authentication or account track setting field is grayed out and cannot be specified.	User authentication or account track may be disabled on the printer driver.	Acquire the authentication information using the printer driver.

### 18.2.2 Others

Problem	Possible Cause	Remedy
Cannot install the printer driver.	It has already been installed in Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 as a printer compatible with the Web service print function.	If you try to install a printer driver in Windows Vista/Server 2008/Server 2008 R2/7 by use of the Web service print function, it is recognized as installed before the actual installation is completed. Uninstall the printer in the [Network] Window, and then install it again.

### 18.2.3 Error message

Message	Cause and remedy
A connection to the network was not able to be established.	A connection to the network was not able to be established. Make sure that the network cable is correctly connected. In addition, make sure that [Network Settings] in [Administrator Settings] have been correctly configured.

---

**19**

**Product Specification/Report**

---



# 19 Product Specification/Report

## 19.1 Product specifications


Item	Specifications
Type	Built-in printer controller
RAM	2 GB
HDD	250 GB
SSD	2 GB
I/F	Ethernet (1000Base-T/100Base-TX/10Base-T) USB 2.0
Frame type	Ethernet 802.2 Ethernet 802.3 Ethernet II Ethernet SNAP
Supported protocols	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6), BOOTP, ARP, ICMP, DHCP, DHCPv6, AutoIP, SLP, SNMP, FTP, LPR/LPD, RAW Socket, SMB over, TCP/IP, IPP, HTTP, POP, SMTP, LDAP, NTP, SSL, IPX/SPX, AppleTalk, Bonjour, NetBEUI, WebDAV, DPWS, IPsec, DNS, DynamicDNS, LLMNR, LLTD
Page description language	Adobe PostScript 3 (PS3019) PDF Direct Print (PDF Ver. 1.7) TIFF Direct Print (TIFF 6.0 compliant) PPML (Ver. 2.2) PCL5e PCL XL (PCL6) compatible
Operating environment conditions	Temperature: 10 to 30 degrees Centigrade Humidity: 15 to 85%RH
Resolution	1200 dpi × 1200 dpi 600 dpi × 600 dpi
Fonts (Built-in fonts)	<Postscript 3> European 136 fonts <PCL> Agfa Micro Type 80 fonts Line Printer 1 font
Compatible computer	IBM PC or compatible, and Macintosh (PowerPC, Intel Processor)

Item	Specifications	
Printer driver	PCL Driver	<p>Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2)  Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1)  * Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.</p>
	PS Plug-in Driver	<p>Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2)  Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1)  Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1)  * Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.</p> <hr/> <p>Mac OS X 10.4/10.5/10.6</p>

Item	Specifications	
Printer driver	PPD driver	<p>Windows XP Home Edition (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional (Service Pack 3)*  Windows XP Professional x64 Edition (Service Pack 2)  Windows Server 2003, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Server 2003, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2)*  Windows Vista Business (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Enterprise (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Basic (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Home Premium (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Vista Ultimate (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Standard Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008, Enterprise Edition (Service Pack 2) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Standard (Service Pack 1) *  Windows Server 2008 R2 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Home Basic (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Home Premium (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Professional (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Enterprise (Service Pack 1) *  Windows 7 Ultimate (Service Pack 1) *  * Supports 32-bit (x86)/64-bit (x64) environment.</p>
		Mac OS X (10.4, 10.5, 10.6)
Utility	<p><b>PageScope Web Connection</b>  &lt;Windows XP/Server 2003/Vista/Server 2008/7&gt;  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Microsoft Internet Explorer 8 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> <li>Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> </ul> &lt;Macintosh Mac OS X&gt;  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> </ul> &lt;For Linux&gt;  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Mozilla Firefox 3.6 or later (Recommended) (JavaScript and Cookies enabled)</li> </ul> Adobe® Flash® Player:  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When you select the Flash as the display method, Flash Player is necessary to be installed.</li> <li>To install the Flash Player, be sure the system requirement in advance.</li> </ul> </p>	
Citrix operating environment	<p>The operation of this driver has been confirmed only in the following environments.  Citrix Version: XenAPP6.0  Server OS: Windows Server 2003/2008  Client OS : Windows XP SP2 (32/64bit)/Windows 7 SP1 (32/64bit)  * For operating in an environment other than those described above, consult the dealer.</p>	

## 19.2 Printing reports

### 19.2.1 Configuration Page Print



# KONICA MINOLTA

**Configuration Setting**

Version
System Version: A4EW011-00P1-F00-1000
HDD Version: 10-0000
Interpreter
PCL-5e Version: EV1-NJ4-011-000
PCLXL Version: EV1-NJ4-011-000
TIFF Version: EV1-NJ4-011-000
PS Version: 2.0.3
PPML Version: 3.2

Device Information
Printer RAM Size: 2048MB
HDD Free Size
Configuration: 7716MB
Fonts: 9532MB
Spool: 16747MB
Documentation: 192125MB

TCP/IP Setting
TCP/IP Setting: Enable
IP Address Setting Method: Manual Setting
DHCP Setting: Disable
BOOTP Setting: Disable
ARP/PING Setting: Enable
AUTO IP Setting: Enable
IP Address: 10.11.2.130
Subnet Mask: 255.255.240.0
Default Gateway: 10.11.0.1
IPv6 Setting: Enable
IPv6 Auto Setting: Enable
IPv6 DHCP Setting: Enable
Global Address: 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000
Prefix Length: 0
Link Local Address: fe80:0000:0000:0000:0250:aaff:fe21:c05d
Gateway Address: 0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000
DNS Server Setting (IPv4) Enable
DNS Server Auto Obtain: Enable
Primary DNS Server: 10.11.2.18
Secondary DNS Server1: 0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server2: 0.0.0.0
DNS Server Setting (IPv6) Enable
DNS Server Auto Obtain: Enable
Primary DNS Server: 10.11.2.18
Secondary DNS Server1: 0.0.0.0
Secondary DNS Server2: 0.0.0.0
Dynamic DNS Setting: Disable
Host Name: MFP21C05D
LLMNR Setting: Enable
DNS Domain Auto Obtain: Enable
DNS Search Domain Auto: Enable
DNS Default Domain Name: btcsolocal
DNS Search Domain Name 1:
DNS Search Domain Name 2:
DNS Search Domain Name 3:
RAW Port
RAW1 Port (Port Number:9100) Enable
RAW2 Port (Port Number:9112) Enable
RAW3 Port (Port Number:9113) Enable
RAW4 Port (Port Number:9114) Enable
RAW5 Port (Port Number:9115) Enable
RAW6 Port (Port Number:9116) Enable

IP Filtering
Permit Access: Disable
Set 1: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 2: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 3: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 4: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 5: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Deny Access: Disable
Set 1: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 2: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 3: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 4: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
Set 5: 0.0.0.0-0.0.0.0
IPsec Setting: Disable
IKE Setting
Group1
Encryption Algorithm: Disable
Authentication Algorithm: Disable
Group2
Encryption Algorithm: Disable
Authentication Algorithm: Disable
Group3
Encryption Algorithm: Disable
Authentication Algorithm: Disable
Group4
Encryption Algorithm: Disable
Authentication Algorithm: Disable
Key Valid Time: 28800sec
Diffie-Hellman Group: Group2
IPsec SA Setting
Destroy Time after Setup: 3600sec
Security Protocol: ESP
ESP Encryption Algorithm: Disable
ESP Authentication Algorithm: Disable
AH Authentication Algorithm: Disable

```

Peer
Group1
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group2
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group3
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group4
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group5
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group6
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group7
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group8
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group9
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable
Group10
  Encapsulation Mode : Disable
  IP Address:
  Pre-Shared Key:
  Perfect Forward Secrecy: Disable

```

#### NetWare Setting

```

IPX Setting : Disable
Ethernet Frame Type: Auto Detect
NetWare Print Mode : Disable
Pserver Setting
  Print Server Name : KMBT21C05D
  Print Server Password:
  Polling Interval : 1
  Bindery/NDS Setting: NDS
  File Server Name:
  NDS Context Name:
  NDS Tree Name :
Nprinter/rprinter Set
  Print Server Name: KMBT21C05D
  Printer Number : 255
Status
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :
  Server Name:
  Queue Name :

```

#### HTTP Server Setting

```

HTTP Server Setting: Enable
PSWC Setting : Enable
IPP Setting
  IPP Setting : Enable
  Accept IPP job : Enable
Operations Supported
  Print Job : Enable
  Valid Job : Enable
  Cancel Job : Enable
  Open Job Attributes : Enable
  Open Job : Enable
  Open Printer Attributes: Enable
Printer information
  Printer Name:
  Printer Location:
  Printer Information:
IPP Authentication Setting: Enable
  Authentication Method : requesting-user-name
  User Name: user
  Password : *****
  realm : IPP
Printer URI
  Printer URI: http://10.11.2.130/ipp
  Printer URI: http://MFP21C05D.btcso.local/ipp
  Printer URI: http://10.11.2.130/ipp
  Printer URI: http://MFP21C05D.btcso.local/ipp
  Printer URI: https://10.11.2.130/ipp
  Printer URI: https://MFP21C05D.btcso.local/ipp
  Printer URI:
  Printer URI:

```

#### FTP Setting

```

FTP Send Setting
  FTP Send Setting : Enable
  Proxy Server Address :
  Proxy Server Port Number: 21
  PASV Mode : Disable
  Connection Time Out Time: 60sec
  Port Number : 21
FTP Server Setting
  FTP Server Setting : Enable

```

#### SNMP Setting

```

SNMP Setting: Enable
SNMP v1/v2c Setting
  SNMP v1/v2c(IP) : Enable
  Read Community Name : public
  Write Setting : Enable
  Write Community Name: private
SNMP v3 Setting
  SNMP v3(IP) : Enable
  Context Name:
  Discovery User : Enable
  Discovery User Name: public
  Read User Name: initial
  Security Level: auth-password/priv-password
  auth-password : *****
  priv-password : *****
  Write User Name: restrict
  Security Level: auth-password/priv-password
  auth-password : *****
  priv-password : *****
  Encryption Algorithm : DES
  Authentication Method: NDS
SNMP v1(IPX) : Enable
UDP Port Number: 161
TRAP Setting : Disable
SNMP Authentication Failure: Disable

```

### SMB Setting

SMB Send Setting  
 SMB Send Setting : Enable  
 NTLM Setting : NTLMv1  
 DFS Setting : Enable  
 Publication Services: Disable

Print Setting  
 Print Setting : Enable  
 NetBIOS Name : KMBT21C05D  
 Print Service Name: PRO\_951  
 Workgroup : WORKGROUP

WINS Setting  
 WINS Setting : Enable  
 WINS Auto Setting : Enable  
 WINS Server Address1: 10.11.2.18  
 WINS Server Address2: 0.0.0.0  
 Node Type Setting : H Node  
 Direct Hosting Setting : Enable

### AppleTalk Setting

AppleTalk Setting: Disable  
 Printer Name: KMBT21C05D  
 Zone Name : \*  
 Current Zone: \*

### Bonjour Setting

Bonjour Setting: Enable  
 Bonjour Name : KONICA MINOLTA bizhub PRO 951(21:C0:5D)

### E-Mail TX Setting

SMTP Setting : Enable  
 SMTP Server Address: 0.0.0.0  
 SSL Setting : Disable  
 Port Number : 25  
 Port Number(SSL) : 465  
 Connection Time Out Time: 60sec  
 Binary Division : Disable  
 Divided Mail Size : 500kbyte  
 Server Capacity : 0MBytes  
 POP before SMTP Auth. Setting: Disable  
 SMTP Authentication : Disable  
 POP before SMTP Time: 0Sec  
 User ID :  
 Password:  
 realm :

### E-Mail RX Setting

POP Server Address : 0.0.0.0  
 Login Name :  
 Password :  
 APOP Authentication: Disable  
 SSL Setting : Disable  
 Port Number : 110  
 Port Number(SSL) : 995  
 Connection Time Out Time: 60Sec

### Register E-mail Subject

E-Mail Default: 1  
 No.1: Scan Data  
 No.2:  
 No.3:  
 No.4:  
 No.5:

### Register E-mail Text

E-Mail Default: 1  
 No.1: Scan data is attached.  
 No.2:  
 No.3:  
 No.4:  
 No.5:

## LDAP Setting

LDAP Setting : Disable  
 Maximum Search Results : 100  
 Connection Time Out Time : 60sec  
 LDAP Server Registration  
   Server Address : 0.0.0.0  
   Search Base :  
   Enable SSL : Disable  
   Port Number : 389  
   Port Number (SSL): 636  
   Authentication Method: anonymous  
   Select Server Authentication Method: Disable  
   Login Name : anonymous  
   Password :  
   Domain Name :  
   Referral Setting: Enable  
 Initial Setting for Search Details  
   Name : OR  
   E-Mail : OR  
   Last Name : OR  
   First Name : OR

## TCP Socket Setting

TCP Socket Setting: Enable  
 Port Number : 59158  
 SSL Setting : Enable  
 Port Number(SSL) : 59159  
 TCP Socket (ASCII Mode): Enable  
 Port Number(ASCII Mode): 59160

## OpenAPI Setting

OpenAPI Setting : Enable  
 SSL Setting : Enable  
 Authentication Setting: Disable  
 Login Name:  
 Password :  
 Client Certification: Require  
 Valid Period : Require  
 CN : Require  
 Key Method: Require  
 chain : Require  
 shikkou kakunin : Require  
 Port number : 50001  
 Port number(SSL): 50003

## Web Service Setting

Friendly Name: KMBT21C05D  
 SSL Setting : Disable  
 Print Setting  
   Print Setting: Disable  
   Printer Name : KMBT21C05D  
   Printer Location:  
   Printer Information:  
 Scan Setting  
   Scan Setting : Disable  
   Scanner Name : KMBT21C05D  
   Scanner Location: -  
   Scanner Information: KONICA MINOLTA bizhub PRO 951

## JSP Setting

JSP Setting: Enable  
 SSL Setting: Disable  
 Authentication Setting: Disable  
 Login Name: UnKnown  
 Password : \*\*\*\*\*  
 Port number : 30081  
 Port number(SSL): 30082

## Device Setting

MAC Address : 00:50:AA:21:C0:5D  
 Network Speed: Auto

## Time Adjustment Setting

NTP Setting : Disable  
 NTP Server Address Auto Obtain: Enable  
 NTP Server Address : 0.0.0.0  
 Port number : 123

## Alert mail

Alert mail Setting: Disable  
 Notification Address:  
 Notification Item Setting  
   Service Call : OFF  
   JAM : OFF  
   Replenish Paper Tray : OFF  
   Replenish Toner : OFF  
   PM Call : OFF  
   Finisher Tray Full : OFF  
   Replace Staples : OFF  
   Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

## IEEE802.1x Setting

Authentication Status : Error  
 IEEE802.1X Authentication Setting : Disable  
 Validity Time : Confirm  
 CN : Do Not Confirm  
 Chain : Do Not Confirm

```

SNMP Trap 0.0.0.0

Trans Address Setting1
Trans Address Setting : Disable
SNMP Trap Trans Address: 0.0.0.0
SNMP Trap Trans Port No.: 162
Trans Community Name: public
Notification Item Setting
Service Call : OFF
JAM : OFF
Replenish Paper Tray : OFF
Replenish Toner : OFF
PM Call : OFF
Finisher Tray Full : OFF
Replace Staples : OFF
Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

Trans Address Setting2
Trans Address Setting : Disable
SNMP Trap Trans Address: 0.0.0.0
SNMP Trap Trans Port No.: 162
Trans Community Name: public
Notification Item Setting
Service Call : OFF
JAM : OFF
Replenish Paper Tray : OFF
Replenish Toner : OFF
PM Call : OFF
Finisher Tray Full : OFF
Replace Staples : OFF
Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

Trans Address Setting3
Trans Address Setting : Disable
SNMP Trap Trans Address: 0.0.0.0
SNMP Trap Trans Port No.: 162
Trans Community Name: public
Notification Item Setting
Service Call : OFF
JAM : OFF
Replenish Paper Tray : OFF
Replenish Toner : OFF
PM Call : OFF
Finisher Tray Full : OFF
Replace Staples : OFF
Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

Trans Address Setting4
Trans Address Setting : Disable
SNMP Trap Trans Address: 0.0.0.0
SNMP Trap Trans Port No.: 162
Trans Community Name: public
Notification Item Setting
Service Call : OFF
JAM : OFF
Replenish Paper Tray : OFF
Replenish Toner : OFF
PM Call : OFF
Finisher Tray Full : OFF
Replace Staples : OFF
Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

Trans Address Settings
Trans Address Setting : Disable
SNMP Trap Trans Address: 0.0.0.0
SNMP Trap Trans Port No.: 162
Trans Community Name: public
Notification Item Setting
Service Call : OFF
JAM : OFF
Replenish Paper Tray : OFF
Replenish Toner : OFF
PM Call : OFF
Finisher Tray Full : OFF
Replace Staples : OFF
Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

Trans IPX Setting
Trans IPX SNMP Setting : Disable
Trans IPX Network Address: 00000000
Trans IPX Node Address : 000000000000
Trans IPX Community Name : public
Notification Item Setting
Service Call : OFF
JAM : OFF
Replenish Paper Tray : OFF
Replenish Toner : OFF
PM Call : OFF
Finisher Tray Full : OFF
Replace Staples : OFF
Dispose of Staple ScrapBox: OFF

LPD Setting
LPD Setting: Enable

SLP Setting
SLP Setting: Enable

LLTD Setting
LLTD Setting Enable

SSDP Setting
SSDP Setting: Enable

Certificate Verification
Certificate Verification: Enable

```



### Select Printer Setting

Default Printer Setting 1

1.Port1( Port Number:9100) 1  
 2.Port2( Port Number:9112) 1  
 3.Port3( Port Number:9113) 1  
 4.Port4( Port Number:9114) 1  
 5.Port5( Port Number:9115) 1  
 6.Port6( Port Number:9116) 1

### Spool Print Jobs in HDD before RIP

Job Spool Setting: Auto

### I/F Timeout

Network: 60sec  
 USB : 60sec

### Scan Setting

Auto Delete Document: 24hour  
 File Name: S021901007\_

### Printer Setting

----- Setting Number1 -----

#### Basic Setting

01 PDL : Auto  
 02 Paper Tray Setting : Auto  
 03 Output Tray Setting: Auto  
 04 Simplex/Duplex : Duplex  
 05 Binding Position : Left  
 06 Staple : Off  
 07 Staple Two-point Width: Wide  
 08 Punch : Off  
 09 Fold/Trimming : Off  
 10 Offset : Off  
 11 Output Application : Face Down  
 12 Order : 1 to N  
 13 Sets : 1  
 14 Sort/Group : Sort  
 15 Paper Size : A4  
 16 Orientation : Portrait  
 17 Banner Option : Off  
 18 Banner Paper Tray : Auto  
 19 Convert Paper Size : Off  
 20 Combine Originals/Image Repeat: Off  
 21 Booklet Pagination : Off  
 22 Adhesive Binding : Off  
 23 Image Pos. : Lead Edge  
 24 Quality : 1200  
 25 Full Bleed : Off  
 26 Ring Bind  
 Setting : Off  
 Top Sheet Print Side : Outside Print  
 Last Sheet Print Side: Inside Print  
 27 180° Rotate : Off

#### PCL Setting

01 Font Setting : Courier  
 02 Symbol Set : ROMAN8  
 03 Line/Page : 64  
 04 Point : 12.00  
 05 Pitch : 10.00  
 06 CR/LF Mapping: Off

#### PS Setting

01 PS Error Print: On

#### TIFF Setting

01 Auto Paper Select: On  
 02 Image Position : Center

----- Setting Number2 -----

#### Basic Setting

01 PDL : Auto  
 02 Paper Tray Setting : Auto  
 03 Output Tray Setting: Auto  
 04 Simplex/Duplex : Duplex

05 Binding Position : Left  
 06 Staple : Off  
 07 Staple Two-point Width: Wide  
 08 Punch : Off  
 09 Fold/Trimming : Off  
 10 Offset : Off  
 11 Output Application : Face Down  
 12 Order : 1 to N  
 13 Sets : 1  
 14 Sort/Group : Sort  
 15 Paper Size : A4  
 16 Orientation : Portrait  
 17 Banner Option : Off  
 18 Banner Paper Tray : Auto  
 19 Convert Paper Size : Off  
 20 Combine Originals/Image Repeat: Off  
 21 Booklet Pagination : Off  
 22 Adhesive Binding : Off  
 23 Image Pos. : Lead Edge  
 24 Quality : 1200  
 25 Full Bleed : Off  
 26 Ring Bind  
 Setting : Off  
 Top Sheet Print Side : Outside Print  
 Last Sheet Print Side: Inside Print  
 27 180° Rotate : Off

#### PCL Setting

01 Font Setting : Courier  
 02 Symbol Set : ROMAN8  
 03 Line/Page : 64  
 04 Point : 12.00  
 05 Pitch : 10.00  
 06 CR/LF Mapping: Off

#### PS Setting

01 PS Error Print: On

#### TIFF Setting

01 Auto Paper Select: On  
 02 Image Position : Center

----- Setting Number3 -----

#### Basic Setting

01 PDL : Auto  
 02 Paper Tray Setting : Auto  
 03 Output Tray Setting: Auto  
 04 Simplex/Duplex : Duplex  
 05 Binding Position : Left  
 06 Staple : Off  
 07 Staple Two-point Width: Wide  
 08 Punch : Off  
 09 Fold/Trimming : Off  
 10 Offset : Off  
 11 Output Application : Face Down  
 12 Order : 1 to N  
 13 Sets : 1  
 14 Sort/Group : Sort  
 15 Paper Size : A4  
 16 Orientation : Portrait  
 17 Banner Option : Off  
 18 Banner Paper Tray : Auto  
 19 Convert Paper Size : Off  
 20 Combine Originals/Image Repeat: Off  
 21 Booklet Pagination : Off  
 22 Adhesive Binding : Off  
 23 Image Pos. : Lead Edge  
 24 Quality : 1200  
 25 Full Bleed : Off  
 26 Ring Bind  
 Setting : Off  
 Top Sheet Print Side : Outside Print  
 Last Sheet Print Side: Inside Print  
 27 180° Rotate : Off

#### PCL Setting

01 Font Setting : Courier  
 02 Symbol Set : ROMAN8  
 03 Line/Page : 64  
 04 Point : 12.00  
 05 Pitch : 10.00  
 06 CR/LF Mapping: Off

#### PS Setting

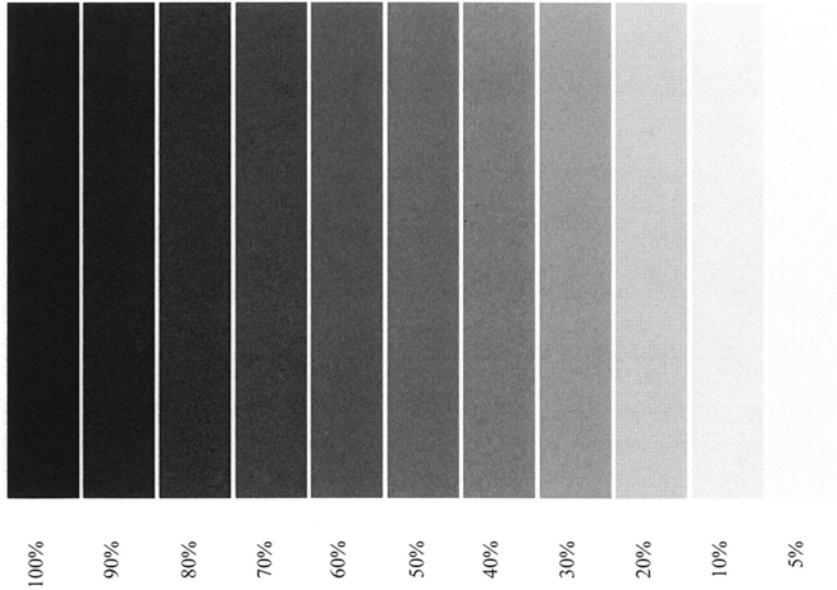
01 PS Error Print: On

#### TIFF Setting

01 Auto Paper Select: On  
 02 Image Position : Center

19.2.2    PCL Demo Page Print

Test Page



*The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.  
The quick brown fox jumps over the lazy dog.*

## 19.2.3 PS Demo Page Print



## 19.2.4 PCL Font List

 <b>KONICA MINOLTA</b> pcl font list					
<u>PCL Internal Fonts</u>					
<u>Font</u>	<u>Pitch/Point</u>	<u>Orient</u>	<u>Escape Sequence</u>	<u>Font#</u>	<u>FontID</u>
Courier	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s0p10h0s0b4099T	0	
CG Times	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b4101T	1	
<b>CG Times Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s3b4101T	2	
<i>CG Times Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b4101T	3	
<b><i>CG Times Bold Italic</i></b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s3b4101T	4	
CG Omega	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b4113T	5	
<b>CG Omega Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s3b4113T	6	
<i>CG Omega Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b4113T	7	
<b><i>CG Omega Bold Italic</i></b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s3b4113T	8	
<i>Coronet</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b4116T	9	
<b>Clarendon Condensed</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v4s3b4140T	10	
Univers Medium	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b4148T	11	
<b>Univers Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s3b4148T	12	
<i>Univers Medium Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b4148T	13	
<b><i>Univers Bold Italic</i></b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s3b4148T	14	
Univers Med. Condensed	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v4s0b4148T	15	
<b>Univers Bold Condensed</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v4s3b4148T	16	
<i>Univers Med. Cond. It.</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v5s0b4148T	17	
<b><i>Univers Bold Cond. It.</i></b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v5s3b4148T	18	
Antique Olive	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b4168T	19	
<b>Antique Olive Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s3b4168T	20	
<i>Antique Olive Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b4168T	21	
Garamond Antiqua	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b4197T	22	
<b>Garamond Halbfett</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s3b4197T	23	
<i>Garamond Kursiv</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b4197T	24	
<b><i>Garamond Kursiv Halbfett</i></b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s3b4197T	25	
<i>Marigold</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b4297T	26	
Albertus Medium	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s1b4362T	27	
<b>Albertus Extra Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s4b4362T	28	
Arial	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s0b16602T	29	
<b>Arial Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v0s3b16602T	30	
<i>Arial Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(slp12v1s0b16602T	31	



# KONICA MINOLTA

## pcl font list

<b>Arial Bold Italic</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis3b16602T	32
Times New Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b16901T	33
<b>Times New Roman Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b16901T	34
<i>Times New Roman Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis0b16901T	35
<b>Times New Roman Bold It.</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis3b16901T	36
Helvetica	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24580T	37
<b>Helvetica Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b24580T	38
<i>Helvetica Oblique</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis0b24580T	39
<b>Helvetica Bold Oblique</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis3b24580T	40
Helvetica Narrow	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s0b24580T	41
<b>Helvetica Narrow Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v4s3b24580T	42
<i>Helvetica Narrow Oblique</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s0b24580T	43
<b>Helvetica Narrow Bold Oblique</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v5s3b24580T	44
Palatino Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24591T	45
<b>Palatino Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b24591T	46
<i>Palatino Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis0b24591T	47
<b>Palatino Bold Italic</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis3b24591T	48
ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24607T	49
<b>ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s2b24607T	50
<i>ITC Avant Garde Gothic Book Oblique</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis0b24607T	51
<b>ITC Avant Garde Gothic Demi Oblique</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis2b24607T	52
ITC Bookman Light	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s-3b24623T	53
<b>ITC Bookman Demi</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s2b24623T	54
<i>ITC Bookman Light Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis-3b24623T	55
<b>ITC Bookman Demi Italic</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis2b24623T	56
New Century Schoolbook Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b24703T	57
<b>New Century Schoolbook Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b24703T	58
<i>New Century Schoolbook Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis0b24703T	59
<b>New Century Schoolbook Bold Italic</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis3b24703T	60
Times Roman	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s0b25093T	61
<b>Times Bold</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12v0s3b25093T	62
<i>Times Italic</i>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis0b25093T	63
<b>Times Bold Italic</b>	Scalable	Port	<esc>(01X<esc>(s1p12vis3b25093T	64



KONICA MINOLTA

pcl font list

[illegible]



## 19.2.5 PS font list

## PostScript® Fonts

### Resident Fonts

AdobeSansMM	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AdobeSerifMM	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AlbertusMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AlbertusMT-Italic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AlbertusMT-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AntiqueOlive-Bold	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AntiqueOlive-Compact	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
AntiqueOlive-Italic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AntiqueOlive-Roman	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Apple-Chancery	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Arial-BoldItalicMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Arial-BoldMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Arial-ItalicMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
ArialMT	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AvantGarde-Book	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AvantGarde-BookOblique	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AvantGarde-Demi	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
AvantGarde-DemiOblique	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bodoni	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bodoni-Bold	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bodoni-BoldItalic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bodoni-Italic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bodoni-Poster	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
Bodoni-PosterCompressed	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bookman-Demi	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
Bookman-Demitalic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bookman-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Bookman-LightItalic	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Carta	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Chicago	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Clarendon	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Clarendon-Bold	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Clarendon-Light	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
CooperBlack	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
CooperBlack-Italic	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC	ABCDEFGABCDEF0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC	ABCDEFGABCDEF0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Coronet-Regular	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Courier	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Courier-Bold	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Courier-BoldOblique	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Courier-Oblique	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Eurostile	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Eurostile-Bold	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo	<b>ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&amp;*?&lt;&gt;~"</b>
Eurostile-ExtendedTwo	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"
Geneva	ABCDEFGabcdefg0123456789[]!@#%&*?<>~"





[illegible]

**Encodings:** Adobe-GB1-0, Adobe-GB1-1, Adobe-GB1-2, Adobe-GB1-3, Adobe-GB1-4, Adobe-GB1-5, GB-EUC-H, GB-EUC-V, GB-H, GB-V, GBK-EUC-H, GBK-EUC-V, GBK2K-H, GBK2K-V, GBKp-EUC-H, GBKp-EUC-V, GBT-EUC-H, GBT-EUC-V, GBT-H, GBT-V, GBTPc-EUC-H, GBTPc-EUC-V, GBpc-EUC-H, GBpc-EUC-V, UniGB-UCS2-H, UniGB-UCS2-V, UniGB-UTF16-H,

## PostScript® Fonts

UniGB-UTF16-V, UniGB-UTF32-H, UniGB-UTF32-V, UniGB-UTF8-H, UniGB-UTF8-V.

### AdobeMingStd-Light

**Encodings:** Adobe-CNS1-0, Adobe-CNS1-1, Adobe-CNS1-2, Adobe-CNS1-3, Adobe-CNS1-4, Adobe-CNS1-5, B5-H, B5-V, B5pc-H, B5pc-V, CNS-EUC-H, CNS-EUC-V, CNS1-H, CNS1-V, CNS2-H, CNS2-V, ETHK-B5-H, ETHK-B5-V, ETen-B5-H, ETen-B5-V, ETenms-B5-H, ETenms-B5-V, HKdla-B5-H, HKdla-B5-V, HKdlb-B5-H, HKdlb-B5-V, HKgccs-B5-H, HKgccs-B5-V, HKm314-B5-H, HKm314-B5-V, HKm471-B5-H, HKm471-B5-V, HKscs-B5-H, HKscs-B5-V, UniCNS-UCS2-H, UniCNS-UCS2-V, UniCNS-UTF16-H, UniCNS-UTF16-V, UniCNS-UTF32-H, UniCNS-UTF32-V, UniCNS-UTF8-H, UniCNS-UTF8-V.

### AdobeMyungjoStd-Medium

**Encodings:** Adobe-Korea1-0, Adobe-Korea1-1, Adobe-Korea1-2, KSC-EUC-H, KSC-EUC-V, KSC-H, KSC-Johab-H, KSC-Johab-V, KSC-V, KSCms-UHC-H, KSCms-UHC-HW-H, KSCms-UHC-HW-V, KSCms-UHC-V, KSCpc-EUC-H, KSCpc-EUC-V, UniKS-UCS2-H, UniKS-UCS2-V, UniKS-UTF16-H, UniKS-UTF16-V, UniKS-UTF32-H, UniKS-UTF32-V, UniKS-UTF8-H, UniKS-UTF8-V.

### AdobeSongStd-Light

**Encodings:** Adobe-GB1-0, Adobe-GB1-1, Adobe-GB1-2, Adobe-GB1-3, Adobe-GB1-4, Adobe-GB1-5, GB-EUC-H, GB-EUC-V, GB-H, GB-V, GBK-EUC-H, GBK-EUC-V, GBK2K-H, GBK2K-V, GBKp-EUC-H, GBKp-EUC-V, GBT-EUC-H, GBT-EUC-V, GBT-H, GBT-V, GBTpc-EUC-H, GBTpc-EUC-V, GBpc-EUC-H, GBpc-EUC-V, UniGB-UCS2-H, UniGB-UCS2-V, UniGB-UTF16-H, UniGB-UTF16-V, UniGB-UTF32-H, UniGB-UTF32-V, UniGB-UTF8-H, UniGB-UTF8-V.

### KozGoProVi-Medium

abcde12345あいうえおアイウエオ亜啞娃阿哀愛挨

**Encodings:** 78-EUC-H, 78-EUC-V, 78-H, 78-RKSJ-H, 78-RKSJ-V, 78-V, 78ms-RKSJ-H, 78ms-RKSJ-V, 83pv-RKSJ-H, 90ms-RKSJ-H, 90ms-RKSJ-V, 90msp-RKSJ-H, 90msp-RKSJ-V, 90pv-RKSJ-H, 90pv-RKSJ-V, Add-H, Add-RKSJ-H, Add-RKSJ-V, Add-V, Adobe-Japan1-0, Adobe-Japan1-1, Adobe-Japan1-2, Adobe-Japan1-3, Adobe-Japan1-4, Adobe-Japan1-5, Adobe-Japan1-6, EUC-H, EUC-V, Ext-H, Ext-RKSJ-H, Ext-RKSJ-V, Ext-V, H, Hankaku, Hiragana, Katakana, NWP-H, NWP-V, RKSJ-H, RKSJ-V, Roman, UniJIS-UCS2-H, UniJIS-UCS2-HW-H, UniJIS-UCS2-HW-V, UniJIS-UCS2-V, UniJIS-UTF16-H, UniJIS-UTF16-V, UniJIS-UTF32-H, UniJIS-UTF32-V, UniJIS-UTF8-H, UniJIS-UTF8-V, UniJISPro-UCS2-HW-V, UniJISPro-UCS2-V, UniJISPro-UTF8-V, UniJISX0213-UTF32-H, UniJISX0213-UTF32-V, V, WP-Symbol.

### KozMinProVi-Regular

abcde12345あいうえおアイウエオ亜啞娃阿哀愛挨

**Encodings:** 78-EUC-H, 78-EUC-V, 78-H, 78-RKSJ-H, 78-RKSJ-V, 78-V, 78ms-RKSJ-H, 78ms-RKSJ-V, 83pv-RKSJ-H, 90ms-RKSJ-H, 90ms-RKSJ-V, 90msp-RKSJ-H, 90msp-RKSJ-V, 90pv-RKSJ-H, 90pv-RKSJ-V, Add-H, Add-RKSJ-H, Add-RKSJ-V, Add-V, Adobe-Japan1-0, Adobe-Japan1-1, Adobe-Japan1-2, Adobe-Japan1-3, Adobe-Japan1-4, Adobe-Japan1-5, Adobe-Japan1-6, EUC-H, EUC-V, Ext-H, Ext-RKSJ-H, Ext-RKSJ-V, Ext-V, H, Hankaku, Hiragana, Katakana, NWP-H, NWP-V, RKSJ-H, RKSJ-V, Roman, UniJIS-UCS2-H, UniJIS-UCS2-HW-H, UniJIS-UCS2-HW-V, UniJIS-UCS2-V, UniJIS-UTF16-H, UniJIS-UTF16-V, UniJIS-UTF32-H, UniJIS-UTF32-V, UniJIS-UTF8-H, UniJIS-UTF8-V, UniJISPro-UCS2-HW-V, UniJISPro-UCS2-V, UniJISPro-UTF8-V, UniJISX0213-UTF32-H, UniJISX0213-UTF32-V, V, WP-Symbol.

Adobe, PostScript, the Adobe logo and the PostScript logo are trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated which may be registered in certain jurisdictions.

Fonts contained in this product may be copyrighted, trademarked or licensed by:  
 Adobe Systems Incorporated, AlphaOmega Typography, Apple Computer, Inc., H. Berthold AG, Ludlow Type Foundry  
 International Typeface Corporation, Kingsley/ATF Type Corporation, Letraset Typeface  
 Linotype-Hell AG and/or its subsidiaries, Marcel Olive, Microsoft Corporation, The Monotype Corporation, Nebiolo.

---

# 20

## Appendix

---

## 20 Appendix

### 20.1 PPD driver (For Linux and applications)

#### 20.1.1 PPD driver types

The PPD driver contains the PPD information for Linux and applications.

- Driver for Linux: Install for use with Linux (Contains PPD for Linux and PPD for OpenOffice)
- Driver for applications: Install when using applications such as Adobe PageMaker that require the PPD driver.

#### 20.1.2 PPD driver for Linux

Operating environment

The PPD driver operates in the environment where systems are combined as follows.

- OS:Red Hat Enterprise Linux 4 -CupsVersion:1.1
- OS:SuSE Linux 10.1 -CupsVersion:1.2
- OpenOffice v1.1.5

#### Registering the PPD driver for Linux

- 1 Copy the PPD file to the CUPS model directory. (/usr/share/cups/model for major Linux)
- 2 In [Add Printer] of the CUPS printing system, specify PPD to add this machine.  
→ For details on CUPS, refer to [Help] in the CUPS Web management page.

#### Configuring the PPD driver for Linux

In [Configure Printer] of the CUPS printing system, configure the functions.

#### Registering the PPD driver for OpenOffice

- 1 In [Add Printer] of the CUPS printing system, specify PPD to add this machine.
- 2 Open the OpenOfficePrinterAdministrator tool.
- 3 Click [New Printer].
- 4 In the [Choose a device type] window, select [add a printer], and then click [Next].
- 5 In the [Choose a driver] window, click [import].
- 6 Select [KOC\*\*\*\*opn.ppd], and then click [OK].
- 7 From the [Please Select a Suitable driver.] list, select [KOC\*\*\*\*opn.ppd], and then click [Next].
- 8 In the [Choose a command line] window, select the printer registered to CUPS, and then click [Next].
- 9 Click [Finish].

## Printing with OpenOffice

- 1 In OpenOffice, select File-Print.
- 2 Select [KOC\*\*\*\*opn.ppd] in [Printer name].
- 3 Click [Properties].
- 4 Select the desired setting in [Page size], and then click [OK].  
To configure settings other than Page Size, click [Configure Printer] in CUPS.
- 5 Click [OK] in the OpenOffice print window to print.

### 20.1.3 PPD driver for applications

PPD registration destination (Example: Adobe PageMaker)

- For PageMaker 6.0:  
Copy the PPD file to RSRCPPD4 under the folder to which PageMaker is installed.
- For PageMaker 6.5 and 7.0:  
Copy the PPD file to RSRC<Language>PPD4 under the folder to which PageMaker is installed.

## How to print

- 1 Select [File] - [Print].
- 2 From the [PPD] box in the print window, select this machine.
- 3 Configure the [Paper] and [Features] settings for the printer.
- 4 Click the [Print] button to print.

## 20.2 Glossary

Item	Description
10Base-T/ 100Base-TX/ 1000Base-T	Standard for the Ethernet and one of the specifications. Cables made of 2 stranded copper wire rods are used. Communication speed is 10Mbps with 10Base-T, 100Mbps with 100Base-TX, and 1000Mbps with 1000Base-T.
Adobe® Flash®	Software or its file format developed by Adobe Systems Inc. (formerly by Macromedia, Inc.), used to create a content by compiling vector-graphic animations and sounds. The software allows handling interactive contents using keyboard or mouse. The files can be kept relatively compact and accessed from a Web browser with dedicated plug-in software.
AppleTalk	The generic name for the protocol suite developed by Apple Computer for computer networking.
bit	The abbreviation for binary digit. The smallest unit of information (data quantity) handled by a computer or printer. A bit uses only a 0 or a 1 to indicate data.
BMP	The abbreviation for bitmap. This is a file format for saving image data. (Extension: ".bmp") Commonly used on Windows platforms. BMP covers the color depth from monochrome (2 values) to full color (16,777,216 colors). BMP images are not suitable for compressed storage.
Bonjour	A Macintosh network technology, automatically detecting a device connected to the network for automatic configuration. Previously called "Rendezvous", and has been changed to "Bonjour" since Mac OS X v10.4.
BOOTP	The abbreviation for Bootstrap Protocol. The protocol is used for a client computer on the TCP/IP network to load network configuration automatically from a server. Instead of BOOTP, DHCP, an advanced protocol based on BOOTP, is typically used today.
Brightness	Brightness of a display or other screen.
Byte	A byte indicates a unit of information (data quantity) handled by a computer or printer. A byte consists of eight bits.
client	A computer using services provided by servers via the network.
Default Gateway	A device, such as a computer or router, used as a "gateway" to access computers on different LANs.
DHCP	The acronym for Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol. The protocol is used for a client computer on the TCP/IP network to load network configuration automatically from a server. Just using a DHCP server to centrally manage IP addresses of the DHCP clients enables you to construct a network without IP address conflicts or other troubles.
DNS	Abbreviation of Domain Name Systems. DNS allows for obtaining the IP address corresponding to a host name in network environments. This system enables a user to access other computers on the network by specifying host names instead of elusive and non-intuitive IP addresses.
DPI (dpi)	Abbreviation of Dots Per Inch. Unit of resolution used with printers, scanners, etc. This indicates the number of dots used to represent an inch. The higher this value, the higher the resolution.
Driver	Software to act intermediately between the computer and peripheral devices.
Ethernet	Standard for the LAN transmission line.
Frame type	A type of communication format used in NetWare environments. For mutual communication, the same frame type is required.
FTP	Abbreviation of File Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to transfer files on the TCP/IP network such as Internet, Intranet, etc.
Gateway	Hardware or software serving as a point connecting networks. Not only connecting, it converts the format, address, protocol, etc. of the data according to the network to be connected.
Gray Scale	A form of presenting monochrome image by using the gradation information shifting from black to white.
Hard disk	Mass storage device to save data. The data is retained even after the power is turned off.

Item	Description
Host Name	Name of a device on the network.
HTTP	Abbreviation of HyperText Transfer Protocol. A protocol used to transmit or receive data between a web server and client (web browser, etc.). Files of image, voice, animation, etc. correlated with the document can be exchanged including the expression form and other information.
Install	To incorporate the hardware, OS, application, printer driver, etc. to a computer system.
IP Address	A code (address) to identify individual network devices on the Internet. IPv4 (Internet Protocol version 4), a protocol widely used today, adopts a 32-bit number for an IP address separated into four sections. An example of an IPv4 IP address is: 192.168.1.10. On the other hand, IPv6 (Internet Protocol version 6), the next generation protocol, adopts 128-bit IP addresses. An IP address is allocated to all computers and other devices connected to the Internet.
IPP	The acronym for Internet Printing Protocol. This is a protocol used to send or receive print data or control printers via the Internet or other TCP/IP network. IPP can also send and print data to printers in remote areas via the Internet.
IPX	One of the protocols used for NetWare. IPX runs in the network layer of the OSI reference model.
IPX/SPX	The abbreviation for Internetwork Packet Exchange/Sequenced Packet Exchange. This is a protocol developed by Novell, Inc., typically used in NetWare environments.
LAN	The acronym for Local Area Network. This is a network constructed by connecting computers on the same floor, in the same building, or in neighboring buildings.
Local printer	A printer connected to a parallel or USB port of a computer.
LPD	The acronym for Line Printer Daemon. This is a platform-independent printer protocol running on the TCP/IP network. The protocol was originally developed for BSD UNIX, and has become one of the printing protocols typically used among general computers.
LPR/LPD	The acronym for Line Printer Request/Line Printer Daemon. This is a printing method implemented via networks, used for Windows NT or UNIX based systems. It uses TCP/IP to output printing data from Windows or UNIX to a printer on the network.
MAC address	MAC is the acronym for Media Access Control. A MAC address is an ID number unique to each Ethernet card, enabling sending or receiving data to or from other Ethernet cards. A Mac address is a 48-bit number. The first 24 bits are controlled by IEEE and used to allocate a unique number to each manufacture, whereas the latter 24 bits are used by each manufacturer to assign a unique number to each card.
Memory	Unit to save data temporarily. Some types of memory retain data even after the power is turned off, while others not.
NDPS	The acronym for Novell Distributed Print Services. This provides a high performance printing solution in NDS environments. Using NDPS for the print server simplifies and automates complicated management activities related to printer use. For example, you can print to a desired printer or automatically download the printer driver for a newly installed printer. NDPS print servers also integrate management related to the network printers.
NDS	The acronym for Novell Directory Services. This allows the centralized management in a hierarchical structure of shared resources such as servers, printers and users information on the network, as well as the access privilege and other information related to the users.
NetBEUI	The abbreviation for NetBIOS Extended User Interface. This is a network protocol developed by IBM. NetBEUI enables you to construct a small-scale network simply by configuring computer names.
NetBIOS	Abbreviation of Network Basic Input Output System. This is a communication interface developed by IBM.
NetWare	A network operating system developed by Novell. This uses NetWare IPX/SPX for the communication protocol.
Nprinter/ Rprinter	A remote printer support module used when using a printer server in NetWare environments. Rprinter is used for NetWare 3.x, and Nprinter for NetWare 4.x.

Item	Description
OHP/OHT	A transparent sheet used for OHP (Overhead projector). This is used for presentations.
OS	Abbreviation of Operating System. Basic software to control the computer system. Windows, MacOS, and Unix are examples.
Outline font	A type of fonts represented using lines and curves to display an outline of a character. Larger-size characters can be displayed on a screen or printed with no jagged edges.
PDF	Abbreviation of Portable Document Format. One of electronic documents (Extension: .pdf). PDF is a PostScript based format, and can be viewed using Adobe Acrobat Reader, a free viewer software.
PDL	The acronym for Page Description Language. This is a language used to instruct a page printer about images being printed on each page.
Peer-to-peer	A type of network where the connected devices can be communicate with each other without using a dedicated server.
Plug and play	A mechanism used to immediately detect a peripheral device when it is plugged into a computer, and search for an appropriate driver automatically, so that the device becomes operable.
PostScript	Representative page description language generally used for printing requiring specifically high quality, developed by US Adobe.
PPD	The acronym for PostScript Printer Description. This is a file with the description of resolution, available paper sizes, and other information specific to a PostScript printer model.
Preview	A function allowing you to view a result image before being actually processed for printing or scanning.
Print job	A print request transmitted from a computer to a printing device.
Print queue	A software system used by a spooler to save generated print jobs.
Printer buffer	A memory area temporarily used for processing data of print jobs.
Printer driver	Software acting as an intermediate between the computer and printer.
Property	Attribute information. When using a printer driver, different functions can be configured by utilizing its properties. By using properties of a file, you can check the attribute information about the file.
Protocol	Rules by which a computer communicates with other computer or peripheral device.
Proxy server	A server that is installed to act as an intermediary connection between each client and different servers to effectively ensure security over the entire system for Internet connections.
PServer	A print server module available in NetWare environments. This module monitors, changes, pauses, restarts, or cancels print jobs.
Queue name	A logical printer name required for LPD/LPR printing.
Resolution	Degree how correctly the details of images or prints can be reproduced.
RGB	The acronym for Red, Green, and Blue. The RGB are the primary three colors used for monitor and other devices, producing any of the full colors by changing their brightness ratio.
RIP	The acronym for Raster Image Processor. RIP extracts picture images from text data created using PostScript or other page description language. This processor is usually integrated into a printer.
Samba	UNIX server software which uses SMB (Server Message Block) to make UNIX system resources available to Windows environments.
Screen font	A type of fonts used for displaying characters and symbols on a CRT or other monitor.
Shared printer	A printer connected to a server on the network and configured to be used by multiple computers.
SLP	The acronym for Service Location Protocol. This is a protocol that provides capabilities such as finding services or automatic client configuration on the TCP/IP network.



Item	Description
SMB	Abbreviation of Server Message Block. A protocol used mainly to realize sharing of files or printers through the network between Windows.
SMTP	Abbreviation of Simple Mail Transfer Protocol. A protocol to transmit or transfer the electronic mails.
SNMP	The acronym for Simple Network Management Protocol. This is a management protocol in the TCP/IP network environments.
Spool	The acronym for Simultaneous Peripheral Operation On-Line. Data to be output to a printer is not sent directly to the printer, but is temporarily stored in another location. The stored data is then sent collectively to the printer.
Subnet mask	A value used to divide a TCP/IP network into small networks (subnetworks). This is used to identify how many higher-order bits of an IP address are used for the network address.
TCP/IP	Abbreviation of Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol. It is a de facto standard protocol widely used for the Internet. An IP address is used to identify each network device.
Touch & Print	A feature that allows documents sent from the printer driver to be printed simply by placing your finger or IC card on the authentication unit connected to the printer when the user authentication is enabled. In order to use the Touch & Print feature, an authentication unit must be connected to this machine, and the vein patterns or the ID of the IC card for each user must be registered.
TrueType	A type of outline font developed by Apple and Microsoft, and currently used as a standard font type for Macintosh and Windows. This type of font can be used both for display and printing.
Uninstall	To delete software installed on a computer
USB	The acronym for Universal Serial Bus. This is a general-purpose interface defined for connecting a mouse, printer, and other devices with a computer.
Web browser	Software to access web pages. Typical Web browsers include Internet Explorer and Netscape Navigator.
WINS	The acronym for Windows Internet Naming Service. This is a service, available in Windows environments, to call the name server responsible for conversion between a computer name and an IP address.
XPS	Abbreviation of XML Paper Specification. This is one of the electronic document formats developed by Microsoft Corporation. It is first supported in Windows Vista.

---

# 21

## Index

# 21 Index

## 21.1 Index by item

### Numerics

180° Rotate ..... 11-8

### A

Accessing ..... 16-2  
 Account track ..... 14-17, 16-5  
 Adding a printer ..... 5-2, 5-15  
 Administrator mode ..... 16-10, 16-17  
 Administrator settings ..... 15-15  
 AppleTalk ..... 3-6, 6-5

### B

Back Cover ..... 10-24  
 Back Cover from Post Inserter ..... 10-24  
 Bonjour ..... 3-6, 6-4

### C

Calling a job ..... 14-8  
 Cannot configure the settings ..... 18-4  
 Cannot print ..... 18-2  
 Chapters ..... 10-15  
 Checking jobs ..... 16-14  
 Collated ..... 13-7  
 Combination ..... 10-15, 11-7  
 Configure ..... 11-28  
 Connection diagram ..... 2-7  
 Connection methods ..... 3-4  
 Controller Machine Setting Menu screen ..... 15-3  
 Copies ..... 13-7  
 Copies & Pages ..... 13-7  
 Custom Size ..... 13-5

### D

Date/Time ..... 10-27  
 Default settings ..... 10-2, 11-2, 12-2, 13-2  
 Direct printing ..... 16-16  
 Distribution Number Stamping ..... 10-27

### E

Editing Overlay ..... 10-28  
 Editing Watermark ..... 10-27  
 Error message ..... 18-5  
 Ethernet ..... 2-7

### F

Finishing ..... 13-8  
 Front Cover ..... 10-24  
 Front Cover from Post Inserter ..... 10-24

### G

Glossary ..... 20-4

### I

Image/Layout ..... 13-11  
 Installer ..... 4-2  
 Installing ..... 4-4, 4-7, 6-2, 6-3  
 Interfaces ..... 2-7  
 IPP ..... 3-4, 5-7, 5-21, 6-9  
 IPP setting ..... 4-3  
 IPPS ..... 3-4, 5-7, 5-21

### L

Linux ..... 20-2  
 Local connection ..... 2-8, 5-13, 5-22  
 Logging in ..... 16-4, 16-8  
 Logging out ..... 16-4, 16-7  
 LPD ..... 6-7  
 LPR ..... 3-4, 5-2, 5-15, 6-7

### M

Mac ..... 3-6  
 Macintosh ..... 2-6, 6-2, 8-5  
 Maintenance ..... 16-17

### N

NetWare ..... 3-6, 7-2  
 Network ..... 16-21  
 Network connection ..... 2-8  
 Network window ..... 5-9

### O

Offset ..... 13-8  
 Operating environment ..... 4-2, 16-2  
 Option ..... 13-2  
 Orientation ..... 13-6  
 Original orientation ..... 11-5, 11-8  
 Original size ..... 10-12, 11-5, 11-8  
 OS ..... 2-6  
 OS 10.4 ..... 3-6  
 OS 10.5 ..... 3-6  
 OS 10.6 ..... 3-6  
 OS X ..... 2-6, 13-2  
 Other ..... 10-32  
 Output tray ..... 10-21, 11-11  
 Overlay ..... 10-26

### P

Page ..... 13-7  
 Page Attributes ..... 13-6  
 Page Number ..... 10-27  
 PageScope Web Connection ..... 16-2  
 Paper Size ..... 13-6

Parameter details ..... 10-9, 11-5, 12-6, 13-6  
 Pattern ..... 10-30  
 Per Page Setting ..... 10-24  
 Plug and play ..... 5-13, 5-22  
 Port 9100 ..... 3-4, 5-2, 5-15  
 PPD driver ..... 12-2, 20-2  
 Print ..... 2-6, 11-2  
 Printer driver ..... 4-7, 18-4  
 printer driver ..... 4-4  
 Printer drivers ..... 3-2  
 Printer setting ..... 16-19  
 Printing reports ..... 19-5  
 Product specifications ..... 19-2  
 Properties ..... 10-2, 12-2  
 PS font list ..... 19-16  
 Public user ..... 16-8  
 Punch ..... 10-20, 11-9

**Q**

Quality tab ..... 10-30

**R**

RAW port ..... 4-3  
 registered user ..... 16-9  
 Ring Binding ..... 11-9, 12-11, 13-9  
 Rotate 180 ..... 10-15

**S**

Scale ..... 13-6  
 Secure Print ..... 14-2  
 Security ..... 16-18  
 Selecting a printer ..... 6-4  
 Separating chapters ..... 11-17  
 Settings ..... 15-2  
 Setup ..... 2-8  
 SMB ..... 3-4, 5-2, 5-18  
 Sort ..... 13-8  
 Stamp/Composition ..... 10-26  
 Staple ..... 10-20, 11-9  
 Structure of pages ..... 16-11

**T**

Tabs ..... 11-18  
 TCP/IP settings ..... 4-3  
 Troubleshooting ..... 17-2

**U**

USB ..... 2-7, 3-4  
 User authentication ..... 14-15, 16-5  
 User mode ..... 16-13  
 Utility Menu screen ..... 15-13

**V**

Viewing information ..... 16-13

**W**

Watermark ..... 10-26  
 Web browser ..... 16-3

Web service ..... 3-4, 5-9  
 Windows ..... 2-6, 8-2  
 Windows Server 2003 ..... 3-5, 5-15  
 Windows Server 2008 ..... 3-4, 5-2  
 Windows Vista ..... 3-4, 5-2  
 Windows XP ..... 3-5, 5-15

**X**

XPS driver ..... 10-2

21.2 Index by button

**A**

Add a printer .....5-2

Administrator Settings .....15-15

**E**

Editing Watermark .....10-27

**L**

Login .....16-8

Logout .....16-7

**P**

Printer Install .....4-4, 4-7

**Q**

Quality Adjustment .....10-30

**T**

To Login Screen .....16-7

**U**

User Settings .....15-13

Utility/Counter .....15-13



**KONICA MINOLTA**

<http://konicaminolta.com>